

Configurator Training Guide





Copyright

Copyright © ELAN Home Systems, LLC. All Rights Reserved.

All brand or product names used in this document are trademarks, registered trademarks, trade names, or service marks of their respective holders.

Material in this document is subject to change without notice: contact HomeLogic if you would like to confirm that you have the most recent version.

ELAN Home Systems, LLC. 1300 New Circle Road Suite 150 Lexington, KY 40505

Document Revision: 5/21/2010

Contents

Lesson 1: Training Setup	. 1-1
Exercise 1: Install g!Demo	1-2
Exercise 2: Install g!Connect Pro	1-4
Exercise 3: Check the Installation and Start the Configurator	1-6
Exercise 4: Install the Common Resource Library	1-8
Lesson 2: Configurator Overview	. 2-1
About the Configurator Window	2-2
Exercise 1: Software Version and General Settings	2-5
Exercise 2: Check System Modes, Main Tabs and Modules	2-7
Exercise 3: Setting Up Users	2-10
Exercise 4: Backing up the System	2-13
Lesson 3: Configuring Security Systems	. 3-1
Security Integration Overview	3-2
Exercise 1: Add the Communication Device	3-4
Exercise 2: Add the Security Panel	3-6
Exercise 3: Check the Viewer	3-9
Lesson 4: Configuring Climate Systems	. 4-1
Climate Integration Overview	4-2
Exercise 1: Add a Communication Device	4-4
Exercise 2: Add the Heating/Cooling Equipment	4-6
Exercise 3: Discover and Configure Thermostats	4-7
Climate Scheduling Overview	4-9
Exercise 4: Set Schedules	4-10
Exercise 5: Check the Viewer	4-14
Exercise 6: Check the Schedule tabs in the Viewer	4-17
Exercise 7: Check the History in the Viewer	4-22

Lesson 5: Configuring Lighting Systems	. 5-1
Lighting Integration Overview	5-2
Exercise 1: Add Communication Device	5-4
Exercise 2: Add the Lighting System and Discover Devices	5-6
Exercise 3: Create a Custom Keypad	5-9
Exercise 4: Add Scenes to Keypad Buttons	5-13
Exercise 5: Create a Custom Interface	5-15
Exercise 6: Copy the Custom Tab to a Different Resolution	5-22
Exercise 7: Set up a Schedule in the Viewer	5-24
Lesson 6: IR Control	. 6-1
Overview	6-2
Exercise 1: Configure a Global Cache for IR Control	6-4
Exercise 2: Add an IR Device and Learn Codes Using the GC-IRL	6-6
Exercise 3: Check and Optimize Codes	6-12
Exercise 4: Export IR File	6-17
Exercise 5: Create and Customize an Interface for an IR Source	6-18
Exercise 6: TV Channel Favorites	6-22
Exercise 7: Add an IR Device and Import an ELAN IRF file	
from the Common Resource Library	6-27
Exercise 8: Add an IR Controlled Display	6-32
Exercise 9: Add an IR Device and Import Codes from a g! HIR file	6-36
Lesson 7: One-Way RS-232 Control	. 7-1
Overview	7-2
Exercise 1: Add Generic Serial Devices from a Protocol Document	7-4
Exercise 2: Create a Generic Display	7-12
Exercise 3: Import a Serial File from the Common Resource Library	
for a Generic Serial Source	7-17
Exercise 4: Add an Interface for Generic Serial-controlled Source	7-22
Lesson 8: Built-in Sources	. 8-1
Basic Source Overview	8-2
Exercise 1: Add the Internal Player	
Exercise 2: Add a RS-232 Source with a Built-in Driver & Interface	
Exercise 3: Add a RS-232 Source with a Built-in Driver &	
Customizable Interface	8-8

Lesson 9: Configuring Distributed AV Systems	9-1
Distributed A/V Integration Overview	9-2
Exercise 1: Add a Communication Device	9-4
Exercise 2: Add the Audio Zone Controller	9-6
Exercise 3: S8.6 Source Settings	9-8
Exercise 4: Add Sources to the Zone Controller	9-9
Exercise 5: Configure Zones	9-14
Exercise 6: S8.6 Zone Settings	9-17
Exercise 7: Configure Displays for the Zones	9-20
Exercise 8: Add the Video Switch and Configure Sources and Zones	9-22
Exercise 9: Configure the Video Switch to Follow Audio Zones (Slaving)	9-24
Exercise 10: Configure Zones in the Viewer	9-26
Exercise 11: Check the Viewer	9-28
Lesson 10: Configuring Home Theater Systems	. 10-1
Home Theater Integration Overview	10-2
Exercise 1: Add a Communication Device	10-4
Exercise 2: Add the Receiver	10-6
Exercise 3: Add the Internal Tuner Source	10-8
Exercise 4: Configure Sources	10-9
Exercise 5: Configure the Zones	10-12
Exercise 6: Add the Display	10-16
Exercise 7: Assign a Display to a Zone	10-18
Exercise 8: Check the Viewer Interface	10-21
Lesson 11: Configuring Video	. 11-1
Video Overview	11-2
Exercise 1 ⁻ Add a Single IP-Based Network Camera	11-3
Exercise 2. Add an Analog Video Camera	11-5
Exercise 3: Check the Viewer Interface	11-8
Lesson 12: Event Mapper	. 12-1
Event Mapper Overview	12-2
Exercise 1: Arm the Security System on Away House Mode	12-4
Exercise 2: Set Home Mode on Security Disarm	12-7
Exercise 3: Check the Commands	12-9
Exercise 4: Doorbell Triggers Jump to Video Tab	12-12
AV Macro Examples	12-14

Lesson 13: Interfaces: GUI and TS2	13-1
Overview. Exercise 1: Identify and Name Individual Interfaces Exercise 2: Explore Interface Settings Exercise 3: Home Page Setting Exercise 4: Creating a Custom Home Page. Exercise 5: Adding and Configuring a TS2	
Lesson 14: Messaging	14-1
Messaging Overview Exercise 1: Configure Messaging Exercise 2: Configure Messaging Alerts (Phone) Exercise 3: Check the Viewer	14-2 14-3 14-5 14-8
Lesson 15: Configuring Irrigation Systems	15-1
Lesson 15: Configuring Irrigation Systems Irrigation Integration Overview Exercise 1: Add the Communication Device Exercise 2: Add the Irrigation Controller Exercise 3: Add Irrigation Groups and Irrigation Zones Exercise 4: Add Global Irrigation Periods Exercise 5: Check the Viewer	 15-1
Lesson 15: Configuring Irrigation Systems Irrigation Integration Overview Exercise 1: Add the Communication Device Exercise 2: Add the Irrigation Controller Exercise 3: Add Irrigation Groups and Irrigation Zones Exercise 4: Add Global Irrigation Periods Exercise 5: Check the Viewer Lesson 16: Configuring Pool Systems	15-1 15-2 15-4 15-6 15-7 15-7 15-10 15-11 16-1

Your Resources at ELAN

In addition to the information in this Training Guide, be sure to check out ELAN's website at <u>www.elanhomesystems.com</u>. The website provides access to a wealth of documentation including *Integration Notes* for detailed information on specific systems with which the g! software integrates.

Our **Technical Support** staff can assist you Monday through Friday from 8:30 a.m. to 5:30 p.m. EST at **859-514-8289**.

Lesson 1 Training Setup

g!

Overview

This lesson prepares your computer for the training lessons to follow.

You will:

- Install g!Demo onto your computer, which allows your computer to simulate a controller.
- Learn about the different versions of g!Connect
- Install g!Connect Pro, the tool used to access systems locally or over the Internet.
- Check the installation of the g! software.
- Install the Common Resource Library, a tool that includes documentation, firmware, IR & Serial Database, and a TV/Radio icon library.
- Check the installation of the Common Resource Library.

Requirements

- A working computer running Windows XP, Windows Vista, or Windows 7
- Access to the g!Demo Installer
- Access to the g!Connect Installers
- Access to the Common Resource Library Installer

(These can be found on your Training Resource CD)

Exercise 1: Install g!Demo

Overview The g!Demo system is a limited build of controller software that is intended to be installed on a workstation or laptop. The software is identical to the software that runs on controllers such as the HC Series or the HomeBrick/MultiBrick controllers, but the installation is not capable of actually communicating with sub-systems.

As a result, the g!Demo is ideal for training and demonstrations. You can run the software on your laptop at any location without the need for a controller or any other hardware.

It is important to note that the g!Demo software that we will install during this exercise runs "behind the scenes" to enable your computer to behave as a ELAN Controller such as a HC/HomeBrick/MultiBrick controllers. It is NOT the interface that you will use to set up and configure the systems. That application is called g!Connect, and will be installed in Exercise 2.

Note: The installation files that will be used in this class are provided in the Training Resource CD that your instructor will give you.

How-to

Important Note: Verify that your PC does not have the HomeLogic version 4 demo software installed. If it does be sure to uninstall it prior to continuing.

- 1. Locate the g!Demo Installer on the training resource CD.
- 2. Start the Installation Wizard.
 - a. If you are running Windows XP, double-click the Installer to start the installation wizard.
 - b. If you are using Windows Vista, right-click the installer and select **Run as Administrator**.



3. Click **Next>** to proceed through the installation, and accept default settings where applicable. *When the installation is complete the g!Demo icon displays on your desktop*



- 4. To start the controller software, double-click the **g!Demo** icon-you will see the controller software start-and then minimize to the Task Bar.
- 5. Locate and click the **g!Demo** on the taskbar. *The g!Demo window opens.*

⊒∯g!Demo		- 🗆 🗵
TraceServer		
ErrorLogger		
GATEWAY.EXE version	: 5.0 Build 594.0 Kel	10.00
Build Date	: Mar 29 2010	
Build_Time	: 19:09:11	
Base Port	: 80	
*** DEMO MODE ***		
Press F12 to exit		
FileSystem Updated/Chec	ked	
SystemLayout		
EventServer		
IP Server		
LockServer		
FontServer		
Tablet		
FTPServer		
CalendarServer		
UserServer		
AudioServer 1/4		
>> SYSFAM->Lighting Deu	vice Controllers COMP->Uirtual Lighting Device Contro	aller
>> SYSFAM->HUAC Control	llers COMP->Thermostat:ID1	
>> SYSFAM->HUAC Control	llers COMP->Thermostat:ID2	
>> SYSFAM->Audio Zone (Controllers COMP->Internal	-

6. Minimize the g!Demo by clicking the **Minimize** button at the upper-right of the window to clear the desktop and keep the g!Demo running.

Note: g!Demo is the software that runs on your computer to emulate an ELAN controller. Be sure to leave this window open during the training session.

Exercise 2: Install g!Connect Pro

Overview The g!Connect software is the tool that dealers and home owners use to connect to ELAN systems from either a network connection inside the house, or remotely over the Internet. The g! software provides two versions g!Connect. Either version or both versions of g!Connect may be installed on a single PC and will behave as independent programs.

g!Connect – This simplified connection management utility is intended for use by end-users. It provides g! Viewer access to controllers running on a local network or remotely over the internet. This version will automatically manage g! Viewer software versions to allow reliable connections to the controller. This version is available on your Training CD and on the ELAN website.



g!Connect Pro – This pro version of the connection management utility is intended for use by g! system installers and dealers. This version provides g! Viewer and g! Configurator access to controllers running on a local network or remotely over the internet. This version automatically manages g! Viewer and g! Configurator software versions to allow reliable connections to the controller. The g!Connect Pro installer includes additional installer tools accessible under the Windows start menu. This version is available on your Training CD and from the ELAN dealer website.





- *How-to* Note: If any versions of OneHome Connect or g!Connect are already installed on your PC, you must uninstall the software before proceeding with this exercise.
 - 1. Navigate to g!ConnectPro_Setup.exe on your training CD.
 - 2. Start the Installer.
 - a. If you are running Windows XP, double-click the Installer and click **Run** to start the installation. *The Setup Wizard Welcome screen displays.*
 - b. If you are using Windows Vista, right-click the Installer, then select **Run as Administrator**, as you did above for the g!Demo.



- 3. Click **Next>** to proceed through the installation, and accept default settings where applicable.
- 4. The g!Connect Pro icon is now on your desktop.

Note: The software must be installed to the default location C:\ELANhomesystems\gConnect to function correctly.



Exercise 3: Check the Installation and Start the Configurator

Overview Before you begin this exercise, you must have g!Demo and g!Connect Pro installed on your computer. This exercise walks you through the steps to start both the Viewer and Configurator software.

Note: It is possible, and sometimes even preferable, to have both the Viewer and Configurator running at the same time. The Viewer updates in real-time, making it a useful tool for checking your configuration settings.

How-to

 Check to see if g!Demo is running. Look in your taskbar: if it's running you will see it there. If it's not there, double-click the g!Demo icon on your desktop to start it.

Note: If you are using Windows Vista, right-click the g!Demo icon and select Run as Administrator.

2. Double-click the **g!Connect Pro** icon on your desktop to open the login screen. *The g!Connect initial page will display.*



 Click the Options >> button to expand the lower portion of the dialog box. In this section, you will find the Local Systems box as well as the Configure IP Info... and Start Configurator buttons.





Initial Screen: g!Demo

Initial Screen: ELAN Controller

4. Select **Local Machine** in the Local Systems list, and click **Start Viewer**. *The Viewer interface will display.*

g!		Hor	ne						36° Fair	0
	Forecast		\forall	\checkmark		Mai	rch 2	2010		
	Friday Becoming Sunny	18° / <mark>39</mark> °		Sun	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thr	Fri	Sat
	Saturday Mostly Sunny	28° / 35°		7	1 0	2	3	4	5 12	6
60 %	Sunday Rain	40° / 42°		14	15	9 16	17	18	12	20
90 %	Monday ^{Rain}	40° / 44°		21	22	23	24	25	26	27
40 %	Tuesday Chance Rain	37° / 40°		28	29	30	31			

- 5. Double-click the **g!Connect Pro** icon on your desktop again to open another login screen.
- 6. Select Local Machine in the Local Systems list, and click Start Configurator. *The Configurator interface will display.*



Exercise 4: Install the Common Resource Library

Overview The Common Resource Library is an invaluable tool for the dealer setting up a g! system. The library contains:

- Manuals, Integration Notes, other documentation,
- IR codes and serial codes
- TV Channel icons
- Firmware for ELAN equipment

The library is used not only as a resource tool, but as the storage area for icons and codes used in the g! Configurator. When the Common Resources Library is installed on your PC, Configurator takes you to the correct directory where the type of file you need is stored.

This software has a built-in option to keep up to date with all of the latest files from ELAN and the files are stored locally, so they are available to you without an internet connection.

Before you begin this exercise, close g!Demo and all other running applications. Since this library is fairly large (~350mb) it may take a few minutes to install.

How-to1. Navigate to the Common Resource Library installer on your training CD.Double-click the installer to begin the installation.

Note: If you are using Windows Vista, right-click the installer and select Run as Administrator.

Follow the on-screen instructions to accept the license agreement and install the library files and program.

💕 Common Resource Library	y - InstallAware Wizard
o	Welcome to the InstallAware Wizard for Common Resource Library
	The InstallAware Wizard will install Common Resource Library on your computer.
	WARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treaties.
	To continue, click Next.
	<back next=""> Cancel</back>

2. Once the installation is complete, launch the application from the desktop icon to access the Common Resource Library.



3. From within the library, you can browse, or update the documentation and databases from the available drop down menus.

5	
	Audio Integration Note
Manufacturer:	Elan
Model Number(s):	\$8.6
Comments:	OneHome Software ver. 4.0 rel 1288 or later S8.6 Firmware compatible with HomeLogic 1.0.2.1 – 1.0.4.1.6.1.2.1.1 S8.6 Firmware versions that are NOT compatible 1.1.0.3 – 1.1.2.1
Document Revision Date:	7/13/2009
THE FOLLOWING FEATURES AN	ORTED FEATURES
Traditional Whole-House A switcher that can be controll Viewer interface can be used	kedio and Video: The Elan SS,6 is a multi-zone – multi-source sudio/video ed by the OneHome software using its serial (RS-232) port. The OneHome d to select sources by zone, and control volume in each zone.
Multiple \$8.6 units: Up to OneHome software.	4 Elan 58.6 units can be controlled using a single serial (RS-232) port in the
Independent Zone Setting	s: Volume, Bass and Treble can be adjusted independently for each zone.\
Audio and Video Source S events in the OneHome syst	ensing: Source signal sensing is supported and can be used to trigger tem.
Whole House Music: The	Whole House Music (WHM) feature is supported.
Do Not Disturb: The Do No	ot Disturb (DND) feature is supported.
Sense Inputs: The sense is	nputs are supported and can be used to trigger system events.
Programmable Trigger Ou Software.	tputs: The Programmable Trigger Outputs can be utilized via the OneHome
	OneHome ^{1M} Management and Cor Manufacturer: Model Number(s): Commertie: Document Revision Calar OVERVIEW AND SUPPORT THE COLORISM Model-House A solid that that an is defined that and Video Source Sum Audio and Video Source Sum Audio and Video Source Sum Do Hoo Interview: The Do Ho Sense Inputsta: The sense Programmable Trigger Ou Sources

Notes:

Lesson 2 Configurator Overview

g!

Overview

This lesson provides an overview of the Configurator tool that is used to set up the ELAN controller.

In this lesson you will:

- Learn how the Configurator window is organized.
- Navigate the Configurator's System Tab and learn its basic functions to become familiar with Configurator.
- Check basic system information, such as the software version.
- Set up users in the system.
- Configure settings to pull weather data for the home page.
- Check System Modes and Main Tab configuration.
- Learn how to check current licenses.
- Perform a Backup of your configuration.
- Learn how to update the software on your ELAN Controller.

Requirements

• A PC running g!Demo and g!Connect Pro.

-or-

• ELAN Controller and g!Connect Pro.

About the Configurator Window

Overview The **Configurator** is the software tool that is used to set up and manage the ELAN system. The Configurator is used to add and configure devices such as thermostats, lighting devices, audio components, and others.

The Configurator has a simple point and click interface, so that you can easily make changes to the ELAN system. Like the Viewer, the Configurator is used as an interface to the ELAN Controller to make real-time changes to the system. The Configurator cannot be used for off-line system configuration.

Navigating the Configurator

- The Configurator is comprised of three sections:
 - **System Tabs**: Main sections of the Configurator containing sub-system pertinent information.
 - **System Tree**: The list of configuration options and devices for the selected subsystem.
 - **Properties Window**: Detailed information and settings for the current System Tree selection.



Information flows from left to right across the screen. When you click a system tab on the left, the System Tree displays information pertinent to that tab—devices that are set up for specific sub-systems, or appropriate groups of information for global settings. When you select an item in the System Tree, its parameters display in the properties window.

System	System Tabs
Interface	The System tabs on the left of the screen are your primary navigation element. System Tabs include the following:
Security	• System : overall system settings, including serial number, software version, date and time, user configuration, and system modes. This lesson contains further information on the System Tab.
Climate	 Interface: adjust user interface settings for individual touch screens and keypads. See Lesson 13, Interfaces (GUI and TS2) for more information.
Lighting Media	• Security: configuration and status of devices, zones and partitions for integrated Security Panels. See Lesson 3, <i>Configuring Security Systems</i> for more information.
Messaging	• Climate: configuration and status of devices, global climate settings, and scheduling for integrated climate control systems. See Lesson 4, <i>Configuring Climate Systems</i> for more information.
Irrigation	• Lighting: configuration and status of devices, scheduling, and custom interfaces pertinent to integrated lighting and shade systems. See Lesson 5, <i>Configuring Lighting Systems</i> for more information.
Pool Control Input/Output	• Media: configuration and status of zone controllers, receivers, 2-way sources and other interfaces pertinent to audio and home theater control. See Lessons 9 & 10, <i>Configuring Distributed AV & Home Theater Systems</i> for more information.
UPS Event Mapper	 Messaging: configuration of the modem for answering service/dial-in system control, voice mail boxes, email and text-to-speech alert messages. See Lesson 14, <i>Messaging</i> for more information.
Content	• Video: configuration and status of video cameras and IP video servers, DVR and custom interfacess. See Lesson 11, <i>Configuring Video Cameras</i> for more information.
	• Irrigation: device, zone, schedule and area configuration of integrated irrigation controllers. See Lesson 15, <i>Irrigation</i> for more information
	• Pool Control: configuration and status of devices and circuits for integrated Pool/Spa controllers. See Lesson 16, <i>Configuring Pool Systems</i> for more information.
	• Input/Output: configuration and status for input/output devices such as contact closures, sense inputs, custom serial drivers, IR devices and other system

• UPS: configuration and status of integrated Uninterruptable Power Supplies.

objects. See Lessons 6 though 9 for more information.

- **Event Mapper**: custom macro programming, such as turning lights on when a door is opened. See Lesson 12, *Event Mapper* for more information.
- **Content**: options for editing music share folders for the internal player, picture folders for the photo screensaver, TV channel favorites and web pictures.

System Tree

g! g!Demo : Co	nfigurator			
System	System	OneHome System		
Interface	CPU Usage	System Name	glDemo	
	Main Tabs	Serial Number	00-21-85-0C-B7-F5	
Security	Module Configuration	Version	5.0 Build 594.0 Rel	
Climate	Active Client Connections	Internal Port	80	
onnate	Contacts and Users	External Port	443	
Lighting	System Logs	ZIP Code		
	Exceptions	Latitude	42.50	
Media	Connections	Longitude	70.87	
Magazing		Time Zone	GMT-5	•
Intessaging		Enable Relay Agent	Never	-

The **System Tree** in the middle of the screen displays a listing of sub-systems, devices or option groupings that can be selected for editing within a particular System Tab.

Items in the System Tree that have an arrow next to them when selected (highlighted) have additional options or actions that can be configured. Either right-click on the item, or click on the arrow to display a pop-up menu.

System (
🗌 🕀 System Time 📃 🔪					
🗌 👯 CPU Usage	Backup System Configuration to	File			
System Modes	Restore System Configuration from				
🔄 📑 Main Tabs	Backup Full System to File				
Module Configuration	Restart Target System (Software Only)				
	Reboot Target System (Hardwar	e)			
Contacts and Osers	External Port	443			
Admin	ZIP Code	01945			

Properties Window

g!Demo : Co	nfigurator	1402-010		- 🗆 ×
System	System	DneHome System		
Interface	CPU Usage	System Name	g!Demo	
Security	Main Tabs Module Configuration	Version	5.0 Build 594.0 Rel	
Climate	Active Client Connections Section: Active Client Connections Section: Active Client Connections	Internal Port External Port	80 443	
Lighting	Admin 🔄 🗊 System Logs	ZIP Code	42.50	
Media	I Exceptions	Longitude	70.87	
Messaging		Time Zone Enable Relay Agent	GMT -5 Never	•
Video		External IP Static Address	Automatic	•
Irrigation		Weather Source	USA (Automatic by ZIP Code)	•
Pool Control		Weather Params	te Current Conditions Airport	
Input/Output				

The **Properties** window at right shows details of the item you select in the System Tree. The properties window is typically used for specific device configuration, such as selecting a COM port, or editing the options for a device; but can include non-editable reference information as well. Custom interfaces and home pages are also created in the properties window.

Exercise 1: Software Version and General Settings

- *Overview* This exercise demonstrates the System tab and explains several general parameters used in an ELAN system.
- How-to
 1. With the Configurator running, click the System tab on the left side of the window if it is not active already. The window will appear as follows, showing the System Tree in the middle section.



2. Click System in the System Tree to display the general system parameters.

<i>ឡ</i> /g!Demo:Con	figurator		
System	System 🕒 🕒 System Time	OneHome System	
Interface	CPU Usage	System Name	g!Demo
	System Modes	Serial Number	00-21-85-0C-B7-F5
Security	Module Configuration	Version	5.0 Build 594.0 Rel
	Active Client Connections	Internal Port	80
Climate	Contacts and Users	External Port	443
Liahtina	Admin	ZIP Code	
Lighting		Latitude	42.50
Media	Connections	Longitude	70.87
	System	Time Zone	GMT-5
Messaging		Enable Relay Agent	Never
Video		External IP	Automatic
		Static Address	0.0.0.0
Irrigation		Weather Source	USA (Automatic by ZIP Code)
		Weather Params	
Pool Control		Local	te Current Conditions Airport
Input/Output			
UPS			
Event Mapper		_	
Content		Арріу	Cookup Lat/Lon/TimeZone from.

Quick Reference:	Quick Reference: System Settings			
System Name	This is the name that is used to log in remotely. You cannot change this name yourself, but the name can be changed by ELAN.			
Serial Number	The serial number displays the last 6 digits of the serial number displayed on your Controller. By default, the model of your controller plus these digits makes up your System Name. The serial number may also be useful information to technical support during troubleshooting.			
Version Number	The software version number of the controller to which you are currently connected.			
ZIP Code	Enter the correct ZIP Code for the home in which the system is installed. If you have entered a zip code and have an internet connection, you may click the Lookup Lat/Lon/Time Zone from ZIP Code button to automatically populate the correct values.			
Latitude / Longitude / Time Zone	The appropriate latitude and longitude should appear in the Latitude and Longitude edit boxes. If these values are not added automatically, they may be entered manually.			

 Enter a ZIP code and click the Lookup Lat/Lon/Time Zone from ZIP Code button. If you have internet access, after a moment the correct Latitude, Longitude and Time Zone should populate. Once the correct values are entered, click Apply to save the settings.

Note: Correct ZIP code, latitude/longitude and time zone must be entered for astronomical settings such as weather icons, outside temperature and sunset/sunrise scheduling to be effective.

Exercise 2: Check System Modes, Main Tabs and Modules

Overview This exercise explains current system settings.

Terms The following terms are important to know for this exercise:

- **System Modes:** Different states that the system can be set to; for example, "Home" when the homeowner is present and "Away" for when the house is empty. System Modes are primarily used to set up schedules for lighting and climate control, but can also be configured through the Event Mapper to add additional functions; allowing the homeowner one-touch control of the behavior of several sub-systems. Although most installations use the default number of two modes, up to ten can be configured through the System tab.
- **Main Tabs:** Icons that appear on the main menu page of the Viewer interface. You can change the order of the icons, and change the text that appears above each icon.
- How-to1. Click System Modes in the System Tree as shown below. In this screen, notice that the house is set up with 2 modes, Home and Away.

<i>g</i> !g!Demo:C	onfigurator			
System	System	System Modes		
Interface	CPU Usage	Number of Modes	2	-
Intenace	System Modes			
Security	Main Tabs	Mode #1	Home	lcon
Climate	Contacts and Users Admin	Mode #2	Away	Icon
Lighting	🖃 🗐 System Logs			

Notes: From this screen you can add up to 8 more modes for a total of 10 house modes. For each mode you will need to configure a button to display on the Home page in the Viewer to select and indicate the currently active mode.



2. Click **Main Tabs** in the System Tree to display the Main Tab settings, as shown below.

Note: When you click on a specific system in the list you can change the order of the display and change the name to display for each system in the Viewer.

3. Click **Module Configuration** in the System Tree to display the software licenses (the Apps) which have been enabled on your controller.

, g.o olilo . Ooli				
System	System	Module Configuration		
		Madula		
Interface	System Modes	DEMO: Pro - Security	Ves	
	Main Tabs	DEMO: Pro - Climate	Yes	
Security	Module Configuration	DEMO: Pro - Lighting	Yes	
	Active Client Connections	DEMO: Pro - Media	Yes	
Climate	Contacts and Users	DEMO: Pro - Messaging	Yes	
	Admin	DEMO: Pro - Video	Yes	
Lighting	- A System Logs	DEMO: Pro - Irrigation	Yes	
	Exceptions	DEMO: Pro - Pool Control	Yes	
Media	Connections	DEMO: Pro - Photo Album	Yes	
	🗌 🗐 System	DEMO: Pro - DVR	Yes	
Messaging		DEMO: LT - Security	Yes	
		DEMO: LT - Climate	Yes	
Video		DEMO: LT - Lighting	Yes	
		DEMO: LT - Media	Yes	
Irrigation		DEMO: LT - Messaging	Yes	
ingation		DEMO: LT - Video	Yes	
Pool Control		DEMO: LT - Irrigation	Yes	
Con Control		DEMO: LT - Pool Control	Yes	
nout/Output		DEMO: LT - Photo Album	Yes	
mput/Output		DEMO: LT - Internet	Yes	
		DEMO: Viewer Single Seat	Yes	
0-5		DEMO: Viewer 2 Seats	Yes	
		DEMO: Viewer 3 Seats	Yes	
Event Wapper		DEMO: Viewer 4 Seats	Yes	
a		Apply	Install	
Content				

Note: If you are running g!Demo, all apps will appear as installed. A typical system is shown below:

System	System	Module Configuration		
Intorface	CPU Usage	Module	Installed	
intenace	System Modes	Pro - Security	Yes	
Socurity	Main Tabs	Pro - Climate	Yes	
Security	Module Configuration	Pro - Lighting	Yes	
01	Active Client Connections	Pro - Audio	Yes	
Climate	Contacts and Users	Pro - Messaging	Yes	
	Admin	Pro - Video	Yes	
Lighting	E Home Owner	Pro - Irrigation	Yes	
	System Logs	Pro - Pool Control	Yes	
Media		Pro - Photo Album	Yes	
		Pro - Home Theater	Yes	
Messaging		Pro - DVR	Yes	
		LT - Security		
Video		LT - Climate		
		LI - Lighting		
Irrigation		LI - Audio		
		LI - Messaging		
Pool Control				
		LT - Irrigation		
Input/Output		LT - Pool Control		\sim
		LT - Photo Album		
UPS				
		LI - DVR Visuas Circle Cont		
Event Mapper		Viewer 3 Soate		
		Viewer 2 Seats		
Content		Annhy	Install	
		Арріу	Inistan	

Exercise 3: Setting Up Users

Overview By default, one user – Admin— is set up in the system, as shown in the System Tree, under **Contacts and Users** on the System tab. Admin has access to both the Configurator and the Viewer, and can therefore make changes to the system.

In the following exercise you will setup a password for **Admin** to prevent the homeowner from accidentally changing important settings. Then you will add a new user for the homeowner so they can access the Viewer (but not the Configurator).

- How-to
- 1. Navigate to the System tab, and then select the **Admin** user under Contacts and Users in the System Tree, as shown below.

System	System	User: Admin	
Interface	CPU Usage	Name Sustem #	Admin
Security	Hain Tabs He Main Tabs He Module Configuration	Email	
Climate	Active Client Connections	Phone Number N.Dials	3
Lighting	I System Logs I Exceptions	Ack Ends Call. Viewer Allowed	No 🔽 Yes
Media	Connections System	Config Allowed	Yes 🔽
Messaging		Login As Tablet	Set User Password
Video			
Irrigation			
Pool Control			
Input/Output			
UPS			
Event Mapper			
Content		Apply	

- 2. Click **Set User Password** in the properties window at right. *The Set User Password window opens.*
- 3. Enter Admin in the Password and Confirm boxes, and click OK. In the future, when you login to the system with this password, the system will know that you are the Admin, and allow you to access the Configurator.

X

ncel OK

Note: When setting up a password for the Admin, ELAN highly recommends that you make a note of the password in a secure place for future reference. If you forget the password, you will be locked out of the Configurator.

4. Right-click **Contacts and Users**, and select **Add New User**. *The Add New User window opens.*

Add New	Jser	X
Name	Home Owner	
	Cancel	ОК

Note: The user name entered here is NOT a login name for the system. This name will only appear in the Contacts and User list in the Configurator. The g! software identifies the user by the PASSWORD they use to log into the system.

5. Type in the desired name for the homeowner in the Name field, and click **OK**. You will then be prompted for the homeowner password.

Note: The name you enter here for the user is only for your reference. You will always log into the System with the System Name.

6. Enter 1234 in the Password and Confirm boxes, and click OK.

Deserviced		
Password		
Confirm		
	,	
	L	
	1	

Note: To allow access to the Viewer without a password, leave both boxes blank and click **OK**. It is important to note though, that all user authentications in the g! software are by password, and each user must have a unique password. Leaving the password fields blank is recognized as a password and can therefore only be used for one user per system.

7. Select the Home Owner user from the list.

8. Enter an email address and phone number for the Home Owner contact. This contact information may be used later for sending alerts to the user based on system events; see *Lesson 12, Event Mapper* to learn about sending system alerts to a contact.

User: Home Owner	
Name	Home Owner
System #	6715
Email	homeowner@email.com
Phone Number	5551234567

9. Change **Viewer Allowed** for the Home Owner to **Yes**, then click **Apply**. *This will then provide access to the Viewer, but not the Configurator.*

System	System	User: Home Owne	r	
Interface	CPU Usage	Name	Home Owner	
internation	System Modes	System #	6715	
Security	Module Configuration	Email	homeowner@email.com	
	Active Client Connections	Phone Number	5551234567	
Climate	Contacts and Users	N.Dials	3	-
Lighting	Admin	Ack Ends Call.	No	•
Lighting	Svstem Loas	Viewer Allowed	Yes	
Media	Exceptions	Config Allowed	No	
	Connections	Login As Tablet	Default	•
Messaging	∎I System		Set User Password	

Note: By default access to the Viewer and Configurator are both initially set to No.

- 10. Test your settings. Close the Configurator and then try to start the Viewer using the home owner's password this should work.
- 11. Close the Viewer, and then try to start the Configurator with the home owner's password this should fail.



12. Type in the password you set for Admin and start the Configurator to log back in.

Exercise 4: Backing up the System

Overview In this exercise you will learn how to create a backup of the current configuration, and learn when to use the different types of backup. Backup files can be created either on-site or remotely; but on-site is recommended. Remote backups take significantly longer, and are more likely to be interrupted due to connection problems. Keep in mind that performing any backup operation essentially shuts down the system so that it can copy files that might otherwise be in use. This might interrupt customer use of the system.

Note: It is possible to backup many individual components. Right-click on items in the Configurator and you will notice an Import/Export function. This can be used on components such as Custom Tabs, Display Settings, TV Channel Favorites and IR Devices and can be very useful for copying and backing up the settings of devices or settings you use frequently.

How-to

- 1. Click on the **System** tab in Configurator, if you are not already on it.
- 2. Right-click on **System** at the top of the System-Tree. *A selection menu appears*.

System	System	Configure IP Info
Interface	CPU Usage	Backup System Configuration to File Restore System Configuration from File
Socurity	Service System Modes	Backup Full System to File
Oliverte	Module Configuration	Restart Target System (Software Only) Reboot Target System (Hardware)
Climate	I Contacts and Lears	

Quick Reference					
Configure IP Info	View/edit the current IP Settings of the ELAN Controller. Note: clicking OK in the IP Settings dialog ALWAYS results in a hardware reboot. If you make no changes remember to click Cancel.				
Backup System Configuration to File	Create a System Configuration backup. See details on System Configuration backup below.				
Restore System Configuration to File	Restore a previously created System Configuration or Full System backup to the ELAN Controller				
Backup Full System to File	Create a Full System backup. See details on Full Backups below.				
Restart Target System (Software Only)	Restart the g! software on an ELAN Controller.				
Restart Target System (Hardware)	Perform a full hardware reboot of the ELAN Controller.				

3. You can create two types of System Backup files. In the majority of cases, you will create a System Configuration backup; full details follow.

Note: Neither type of backup will include pictures or music added to network share folders.

- System Configuration Backup: Creates a backup file containing all data relevant to system configuration. This type of backup file can be used to restore into the original system or another system; which is important in the unlikely event of controller failure. This type of backup will not alter the version of software on the ELAN Controller and is intended to be used on the same version software.
- Full System Backup: Creates a full backup file of the entire system configuration folder, including data not related to system configuration. This type of backup is typically only used for reverting a controller to a previous version of software. The will only work properly on the controller that created the file.
- 4. Select **Backup System Configuration to File...** You will be prompted to choose a save location and file name.

ave As							?
Save in:	Backups			•	🗢 🔁	r 🖽	
à							
My Recent							
Desktop							
My Documents							
3							
My Computer		2					
	File <u>n</u> ame:	SystemN	lame-Version				<u>S</u> ave
My Network Places	Save as type:	HomeLo	igic System Fi	les (*.HLSYS)		<u> </u>	Cancel

Notes about Backup Files:

The backup file name should be descriptive, and should include the system name and version.

ELAN recommends that you create a new file for each backup, rather than continuously overwriting the same file.

5. Navigate to a directory for the backup, enter a name for the backup file, and click **Save**. The system will now open a Backup/Restore window and should quickly populate the list of files to backup. A red bar will also draw across the bottom of the Configurator window indicating System Exit progress.

g!Demo : Conf	igurator						
System	🗌 📕 System	Opollom	o System				
Gystein	🗌 🕒 System Time	Onenon	ie System				
	CPU Usage	Suntam M	amo diDen	10	Č.		
Interface	Backup/Restore						-
Security	File Name		File Size	Max File			-
Security	AUDIO.DAT		44 bytes	44 bytes			_
	AUDIO_INT.DAT		8 bytes	8 bytes			
Climate	AVTPLATE.DAT		140675 bytes	140675 b			_
	AZCTLR0000000.DAT		44 bytes	44 bytes			_
Lighting	COMMANDS.DAT		5916 Dytes	5916 Dytes			
Lighting	DVD DAT		272 Dytes 20 butos	272 Dytes			_
	EVENTS DAT		568 bytes	568 bytes			
Media	ETPTRIG.DAT		8 bytes	8 bytes			_
	GWLOCK.DAT		1955 bytes	1955 bytes			-
	HOMEPAGE.DAT		4206 bytes	4206 bytes			
Messaging	HOMEPAGE_DEF.DAT		4206 bytes	4206 bytes			
	HVACGSCHED.DAT		8 bytes	8 bytes			-
Video	HVACOPTS.DAT		48 bytes	48 bytes			-
	ID.DAT		4 bytes	4 bytes			
	IMGSERV.DAT		1984 bytes	1984 bytes			
Irrigation	IRADIOFAV.DAT		12 Dytes 20 bytes	12 bytes 20 butes	_1 bde)	•
	IRCODES:DAT		20 bytes	20 bytes		·	Ē
Pool Control	File Name C:\HomeLogic Files\g!Demo Ve	ersion 5-XXX.HLSYS					-
	🔽 Do Not Restore Lock Configuration	System Version	5.0.594.0				
Input/Output	💌 Do Not Overwrite System Neme	File Version	5.0.594.0				
UPS							
	Ready To Start			Start			
Event Mapper							
			Apply	Lookup Lat	Lon/Tim	eZone from.	9
Content		System Exi	t Complete				

- 6. When the data gathering process is complete and files have fully populated the Backup/Restore window (usually a few seconds), click **Start**.
- 7. Wait a moment while the backup completes. *During backup, you will see* the files color as they are completed and blue progress bar will draw along the bottom indicating the progress of each file. When file backup is complete, verify that the status line on the bottom indicates **Backup Successful**.

🝠 glDemo : Config	urator				_ 🗆 🗵	
System	System	OneHom	e System			
VIEW ALL AN	CPU Usage	Sustam N	ana di Dan	10		
Interface	Backup/Restore			×		
			let e			
Security	File Name		File Size	Max File		
	SOUNDS(click4.wav		9948 bytes 29106 bytes	9998 bytes		
Climate	ISOLINDSIclick6.way		2420 bytes	2420 hytes		
Cilinate	\SOUNDS\click7.wav		88364 bytes	88364 by		
	SOUNDS\click8.wav		88364 bytes	88364 by		
Lighting	\SOUNDS\click9.wav		22094 bytes	22094 by		
	\SOUNDS\connect.wav		36636 bytes	36636 by		
Modia	SOUNDS Default Transition. wav		13060 bytes	13060 by		
Wedia	SOUNDS(disconnect.wav		36536 Dytes 16142 bytes	36538 DY		
1. 1.85 m	ISOLINDS)Laser way		19040 bytes	19040 by	•	
Messaging	SOUNDS\Military call (trumpet).way		77336 bytes	77336 by		
	SOUNDS RecordOutOfTime.wav		26158 bytes	26158 by		
Video	\TEXTURES\HD11P.png		229992 bytes	229992 b	-	
VIGEO	TEXTURES HD11P_800600.png		130193 bytes	130193 b		
	\TEXTURES\HD12P.png		135349 bytes	135349 b		
Irrigation	TEXTURES/HD15P.png		119504 bytes	119504 b	de) 🔻	
	TITEXTORES(TOPBAR_CG.PNG		65147 Dytes	05147 Dy		
Pool Control	File Name C:\HomeLogic Files\g!Demo Ve	rsion 5-XXX.HLSYS				
	🕅 Do Not Restore Lock Configuration	System Version	5.0.594.0			
Input/Output	💌 Do Not Overwrite System Name	File Version	5.0.594.0			
UPS						
0.0	Backup Successful			Done		
Event Mapper						
			Annie	Contain Later mill	inezione iron	
Content			The second secon	Loonap Lancolin	intezone nom	
System Exit Complete						

8. Click **Done** to exit the *backup* dialog.

Notes:

Lesson 3 Configuring Security Systems



Overview

This lesson shows you how to configure a security system.

You will:

- Learn how security systems are organized in the Configurator.
- Use the Configurator to set up communication for the panel, set up the panel and detect partitions and zones for the security system.
- Check the Viewer to confirm proper configuration.
- Understand the various features available in the Viewer.

Sample House

Our sample house and attached garage will be configured as two partitions:

- House containing four zones.
- Garage containing two zones.

Requirements

• A PC running g!Demo and g!Connect Pro.

-or-

• ELAN Controller and g!Connect Pro.

Security Integration Overview

Overview The following diagram shows the sample house security system schematically, illustrating the components that are important to the ELAN controller.



Integrating the security panel with g! software will provide the homeowner access to their security system through the g! Viewer. For each security partition in their home, they will be able to:

- Arm and Disarm the system
- View partition and zone status and optionally bypass faulted zones.
- Review zone fault and armed status history.

A note about Application functionality:

- **Included Security Functionality:** Supports control of one partition with up to eight security zones for any of the security panels with which ELAN automation controllers integrate.
- Security Pro App: Supports control of up to 8 partitions and up to 256 security zones for any of the security panels with which ELAN automation controllers integrate.
- *Terms* The following terms are used in the Configurator:
 - **Communication Device:** The method the g! software will use to communicate with an external device, including information about the connection type and protocol. In the overview diagram, the communication device is one of the built-in COM ports on the ELAN controller.
 - Security Panel: The actual security controller.
 - Partition (Area): A group of zones in a security panel. Typical partitions include Whole House and Garage, as in the example above. Note that some zones (like a door from the house into the garage) may appear in two different partitions.
 - Zone: An individual sensor in the system, such as Front Door, First Floor Motion, etc.

How-to To integrate a security system:

- Add the **Communication Device**
- Add the Security Panel
- Discover Devices installed on the security panel
- Check the **Viewer** interface

Once the security panel has been added, the g! software is able (in most cases) to automatically import all the zone and partition information from the panel. This is accomplished using the **Discover Devices** feature on the security panel's Property window. In those cases, the security system configuration will be complete once you verify that zone and partition information appears in the system tree.

Exercise 1: Add the Communication Device

Overview

In the following steps you will add a **Communication Device**. The **Communication Device** is the bridge between the g! software and the Security Panel, and is where you will specify how the systems are physically connected and what communication protocol should be used.

Note: Actual system setup may be different depending upon which Security panel is installed on site. Refer to the *Integration Notes* for the particular panel for details.

How-to

1. Start the Configurator, click the **Security** tab at left, then click **Communication Devices**, as shown below:

System Interface	Security System Security System Security Panels	Ad	d New Communication Device	
Security				

2. Right-click **Communication Device** and select **Add New Communication Device**. In the dialog box, configure the settings as shown below for a standard serial port, and click **OK**.

Device Name	Security	
Туре	Serial Port	-
Device		~
Communication Type	Standard Connection	

Quick Reference: Add New Communication Device			
Device Name	Enter a name for the external device. This can be any name, but should be descriptive so that you can identify this specific device in the Configurator. DO NOT leave this field set to "New Device".		
Туре	The type of connection you are using, such as serial port or Ethernet.		
Device	This field will populate only if needed, depending on the selected Type. See the Advanced Topics section at the end of this lesson for more information.		
Communication Type	This is the protocol of the communication. See the <i>Integration Note</i> for the specific security panel for more information.		

System	Security System Security System Security System	Communication Device	ce: Security
Interface	Security	Name	Security
	Security Panels	System #	6716
Security		Device Type	Serial Port / Standard Connection
Climate		Location	< SELECT >
Climate		Enable Sharing	No
Lighting		Sharing Port	0
		COM Port	NONE
Media		Protocol	RS232
Messaging		Baud Rate	9600
wessaying		Flow Control	None
Video		Parity	None
		Data Bits	8
Irrigation		Stop Bits	1
Pool Control			
Input/Output			
UPS			
Event Mapper			
Content		Apply	

3. Select the **Security** device in the system tree.

4. In the properties window at right, select the desired COM port (COM1 in the screen below).

Note: The drop-down menu only shows the ports that are available. If you are running **g!Demo** on your laptop you will only see available ports on the laptop. Leave the selection set to **NONE** if you are using **g!Demo**.

System	Security System Security System Security Communication Devices	Communication Device: Security			
Interface	Security	Name	Security		
	Security Panels	System #	6716		
Security		Device Type	Serial Port / Standard Connection		
Climate		Location	< SELECT >		
		Enable Sharing	No		
Lighting		Sharing Port	0		
		COM Port	Communications Port (COM1) (Unassigned)		
Media		Protocol	R\$232		

Exercise 2: Add the Security Panel

Note: Actual system setup may be different depending upon which Security panel is installed on site. Refer to the *Integration Notes* for the particular panel for details.

How-to

- 1. In the Configurator, right-click **Security Panels**, then click **Add New Device**.
- 2. In the Add New Device dialog box, select Virtual Security Controller, and then click OK.

This adds a new security panel, and also automatically connects the panel to the Communication Device added in the last exercise.

System	Security System Security System Security System		
Interface	Security Security	►	
Security		Add New Device	
Climate		Name Virtual Security	/ Controller
Lighting		Device Type	50BP FA1660C
Media		Bosch/Radionics D7412 DSC MAXSYS	2G,D9412G
Messaging		DSC Power Series DSC Power Series / IT-1 ELK-M1	00
Video		GE Concord GE NetworX NX-4,6,8,8E HALOmni Series	Ξ
Irrigation		Napco Gemini GEM-X25 Virtual Security Controlle	i5, P9600 er
Pool Control			
Input/Output		Search For Devices	Cancel OK
UPS			
Event Mapper			
Content			

3. Select the new security panel in the Configurator. *The properties for that panel display on the right.*

System	 Security System Security System 	Device	: Virtual Secur	rity Controlle	r			
Interface	Security	Name		Virtual Security	Controller			כ
	Security Panels Security Controller	System #		6717				
Security		Device Ty	pe	Virtual Security	Controller			
	Zones	Location		< SELECT >			-	·
Climate	ISecurity Panel Log	Communi	cation Device	Security			-	·
Lighting								
		Mode	Name	Show I	Mode Auto-A	Arm	Key Entry	
Media		Disarm	Disarm	Yes	▼ No	~	Code+Enter 💌	·
Magaaging		Mode 1	Stay	Yes	▼ No	-	Code+Enter 💌	·
wessaging		Mode 2	Away	Yes	▼ No	•	Code+Enter 💌	·

Overview At this point the **Communication Device** is configured, and the security panel can be added.

Click the **Discover Devices** button at the bottom of the window.
 The Configurator queries the security panel to read the

partitions and zones from the hardware. This configuration is then displayed in the system tree. The virtual Security simulates a response.



Quick Refere	Quick Reference: Security Controller Properties			
Mode	A "state" that the security system can be in. Typically each mode will provide a different level of security.			
Name	A name for the mode, such as "disarm" or "away". This is the name will appear on the mode's button in the Viewer.			
Show Mode	Select Yes or No to display or hide a button for this mode in the Viewer.			
Auto-Arm	Select whether this mode is "auto-armed"- that is, the panel is armed without entering a security code when this mode is selected.			
Key Entry	The format for entering the security code on the Viewer keypad.			

In the following screen, the two partitions -House and Garage- were discovered. Each partition has zones associated with it. When you click on a partition, its zones are highlighted in blue.



Exercise 3: Check the Viewer

- *Overview* At this point the security panel has been added and set to communicate with the ELAN controller. You should now check the **Viewer** to verify that the setup displays properly.
- How-to
- 1. Minimize the Configurator so that the Windows desktop is visible.
- 2. From the glConnect Pro main screen, click Start Viewer. The viewer starts and displays the Home page.
- 3. Click the g! icon to access the main menu then click the Security icon to display the configured security partitions.



Note on this screen you can view the status of all the visible partitions.

- 4. Click on the House partition icon to access House partition screen. In the example below, you can see:
 - The system is Ready to Arm.
 - There are no System Faults (such as low battery)
 - There are no Bypassed Zones.
 - The "House" partition is displayed in the top center of the screen.

g	<u>z!</u>	V	House	E) Status	Ш. HISTORY
SU	JMMARY	ZONES	Ready to Arm		
Z	one St	atus			
					AWAY
			All Zones Ready		STAY
S	DISARM				ISARM
	No System				
			Faults		
			No System Faults		

5. Try to Arm the system. Click **Away**, then click **1**, **2**, **3**, **4** and **Enter** in order (this is the default security code for the Virtual Security device). *After a short delay, the display will show Armed.*



6. Click on the **History** button at top right. The Viewer will display the system history tab.

Note: Keep in mind that a newly added security panel will have no history to display.

Example

The screen below shows the Security History from a real system.



Notes:

Lesson 4

Configuring Climate Systems



Overview

This lesson shows you how to configure a climate control system.

You will:

- Learn how climate control systems are organized in the Configurator.
- Use the Configurator to setup communication for the thermostats and setup the equipment
- Check the Viewer interface to confirm proper configuration
- Understand the various features available in the Viewer.
- Learn how to set up schedules for the heating and cooling systems.

Sample House

Our sample house and attached garage will be configured with two heating and cooling zones:

- Living Room
- Bedroom

Requirements

• A PC running g!Demo and g!Connect Pro.

-or-

• ELAN Controller and g!Connect Pro.

Climate Integration Overview

Overview The following diagram shows the equipment in a typical climate system schematically, illustrating the components that are important to the ELAN controller.



Integrating a climate system with the g! software will provide the homeowner access to their climate system through the g! Viewer. For each thermostat in their home, they will be able to:

- Turn on and off the heating and cooling system
- Make adjustments to the heating and cooling set points
- Make adjustments to the heating and cooling schedule
- View the heating and cooling history
- Control fans

A note about Application licensing:

Included Climate Functionality: Supports all thermostats with which The g! software integrates. This version is intended for smaller systems and allows control of up to two thermostats.

Climate PRO APP: Supports all thermostats with which The g! software integrates. This version allows for control of up to 32 thermostats.

- *Terms* The following terms are used in the **Configurator** to describe the equipment in a climate system:
 - **Communication Device:** The method the g! software will use to communicate with an external device, including information about the connection type and protocol. In the overview diagram, the communication device uses one of the built-in COM ports on the ELAN controller.
 - **Thermostat:** The physical thermostat which can control heating, cooling, or fans.
 - Heating/Cooling (HVAC) Unit: The HVAC equipment as seen by the thermostat. From the g! software's perspective, there are only three aspects of the Heating /Cooling Unit that are important:
 - Heating control
 - Cooling control
 - o Fan control
- *How-to* To integrate a climate system:
 - Add the Communication Device
 - Add and configure Heating/Cooling Units
 - Discover and configure the **Thermostats**
 - Configure Schedules (optional)

Once the Communication Device has been added, The g! software is able (in most cases) to automatically import all the thermostats. This is accomplished using the **Discover Devices** feature on the Communication Device's Property window.

Exercise 1: Add a Communication Device

Overview In the following steps you will add a **Communication Device** to communicate with the thermostats. The **Communication Device** is the bridge between The g! software and the thermostats, and is where you will specify how the systems are physically connected and what communication protocol should be used.

Note: Actual system setup may be different depending upon which thermostats are installed on site. Refer to the *Integration Notes* for the thermostats you are working with for more detailed information.

How-to

1. Start the **Configurator**, click the **Climate** tab at left, then click **Communication Devices**, as shown below:



- Right-click Communication Device and select Add New Communication Device. In the dialog box:
 - a. Select Serial Port in the Type drop-down box
 - b. Select Virtual HVAC Network in the Communication Type dropdown box.
 - c. Enter "Climate" as the Device Name.
 - d. Click OK.

Add New Communicatio	n Device 🛛 💽	
Device Name	Climate	
Туре	Serial Port]
Device]
Communication Type	Virtual HVAC Network]
	Cancel OK]

Quick Reference: Add New Communication Device			
Device Name Enter a name for the external device. This can be any name, but should be descriptive so that you can identify this specific device in the Configurator. DO NOT leave this field set to "New Device".			
Туре	The type of connection you are using, such as serial port or Ethernet.		
Device	This field will populate only if needed, depending on the selected Type.		
Communication Type	This is the protocol of the communication. See the <i>Integration</i> <i>Note</i> for the specific thermostat for more information.		

- 3. Select the **Communication Device** in the system tree as shown below.
- 4. In the Property window at right, select the desired port (COM2 in the example below), then click **Apply**.

Note: The drop-down menu only shows the ports that are available. If you are running **g!Demo** on your laptop you will only see available ports on the laptop. Leave the selection set to **NONE** if you are using **g!Demo**.



Exercise 2: Add the Heating/Cooling Equipment

Overview Now that the Communication Device is Configured, we must add in the Heating/Cooling Unit(s) prior to adding the Thermostats.

In a typical installation, the specifics of the heating and cooling systems are transparent to the g! software. The software communicates with the thermostat to change modes and set temperatures, and the thermostat itself turns the heating and cooling units on or off, depending on the chosen set points.

While the particulars of the HVAC equipment aren't required, the g! software does need to know the types of equipment the thermostat controls so it can display the proper modes in the Viewer and track system usage appropriately in the History tab.

In the steps below, we will add an HVAC Unit and have the opportunity to choose the types of systems it controls: Heating, Cooling, or Fans.

- 1. In the **Configurator**, right-click **Heating/Cooling Units**, then click **Add New Device**.
- 2. In the **Add New Device** dialog box, select **Generic HVAC Unit** as shown below, and then click **OK**.
- Select the new Generic HVAC Unit in the system tree as shown below. Note that by default this unit controls Heating, Cooling and Fan(s), so these options are set to **Yes**. This will result in buttons displaying on the **Viewer** to allow the homeowner to set heating and cooling set points, as well as control the fans.

System	□ 】 Climate System □ ૻ <mark></mark> Global Options	Device : Generic HVA	AC Unit		
Interface	Communication Devices	Name	Generic HVAC Unit		
	Thermostats	System #	6781		
Security	E TI Heating/Cooling Units	Device Type	Generic HVAC Unit		
01	Generic HVAC Unit	Location	< SELECT >		
Climate	Custom Tabs	Controls Heating	Yes 🔽		
Lighting		Controls Cooling	Yes 🔽		
00		Controls Fan	Yes 🔽		
Media		Heat Cost per Hour	0.000		
		Cool Cost per Hour	0.000		
Messäging					

Note: In an actual system, you will need to set up a Generic HVAC Unit in the Configurator for each physical unit in the home. If you are setting up multiple systems, be sure to assign a unique name to each unit to make it easier to identify if you need to troubleshoot later on.

How-to

Exercise 3: Discover and Configure Thermostats

Overview Before beginning this exercise, be sure that you have completed Exercise 2, *Add the Heating/Cooling Equipment.* You will need to associate the HVAC unit with the system thermostats in this exercise.

In a typical installation, the system can often detect how many thermostats are present and automatically add them to the System Tree. Once the thermostats have been recognized by the g! software, you then need to name each one and assign its **Heating and Cooling Units**.

Note: Actual system setup may be different depending upon which HVAC Unit is installed on site. Refer to the *Integration Notes* for the particular thermostat for details.

How-to

- 1. In the **Configurator**, navigate to the properties window for the Communication Device you set up in Exercise 1.
- 2. Click **Discover Devices** at the bottom of the screen. After a slight pause, the thermostats will be displayed in the System Tree.
- 3. Select the first thermostat, **Thermostat: ID1**, in the System Tree and do the following:
 - a. Change the Name to "Living Room."
 - b. Set the **Heating Unit** and the **Cooling Unit** to the **Generic HVAC Unit** you set up in Exercise 2.
 - c. Click Apply.



- 4. Select the next thermostat in the System Tree and do the following:
 - a. Change the Name to "Bedroom."
 - b. Set the **Heating Unit** and **Cooling Unit** to the **Generic HVAC Unit** that you set up in Exercise 2.
 - c. Click Apply.

glDemo:Con	figurator		
System	□	Thermostat : Bedroo	m
Interface	🖃 😴 Communication Devices	Name	Bedroom
intendee	See Climate	System #	2400
Security	Inermostats Ising Room	Device Type	Virtual HVAC Thermostat
	T Bedroom	Communication Device	Climate
Climate	E F Heating/Cooling Units	Thermostat ID	2
10.10	Generic HVAC Unit	Heating Linit	Generic HVAC LInit
Lighting	Custom Tabs	Cooling Unit	
Madia			
Weula		Show Usage in History	
Messaging		Show History For Addition	nal Inputs
		Add input	
Video		Edit Input	
Irrigation		Remove Input	
		Add State	
Pool Control			1
Input/Output			
		Remove State	
UPS			
Event Mapper		-	
Contont		Apply	
Content (
	-		2

At this point the equipment has been added and you are ready to set up **Schedules**.

Climate Scheduling Overview

Overview The g! software provides the ability to set up different schedules for the home's thermostats so that heating and/or cooling can turn on automatically at different times of day, according to the homeowner's preferences.

The g! software uses the following concepts for schedule management:

- **Mode**. A unique schedule can be configured for each house mode (Home, Away, etc.) so that when the home owner changes house modes, the climate schedules automatically change too.
- Weekly Program. The days of the week that you want this schedule to be in effect for the selected Mode. An example is to set up one schedule for weekdays, and a different schedule for weekends.
- **Period**. A period is a portion of the day for which you want a specific heating/cooling range to be in effect. In the g! software, you can configure up to four periods in a day.

Note: Each thermostat in the Configurator System Tree is tied to its own schedule. Making changes to the schedule on one thermostat does not change the settings on any other thermostat.

Schedules are set up and managed in two separate steps:

- 1. The **Configurator** is used to perform initial setup to create, name and provide the basic structure for schedules.
- 2. The **Viewer** is then used to change the actual start times and the set points and work with schedules on a regular basis.

Example In the following exercises, you will configure the system to:

for Training

- Use the two house modes Home and Away.
- Set up different schedules for each thermostat: Living Room and Bedroom.

Home Mode:

- Living Room will have two weekly programs, one for weekdays and one for weekends. Each program will have two periods.
- Bedroom will also have two weekly programs, one for weekdays and one for weekends. Each program will have four periods.

Away Mode:

 Living Room and Bedroom will both have one weekly program with one period per day.

Exercise 4: Set Schedules

- *Overview* In this exercise, you will set up the thermostats so they have weekday and weekend schedules, like the example above, using two periods per day for the Living Room and four periods per day for the Bedroom. Both the Living Room and Bedroom will be set up so that when the home owner is away there is one set point for the whole week with just one period for the whole day.
- *How-to* 1. In the Configurator, expand the **Living Room** thermostat and select **Schedule Layout.** *The Schedule Layout properties display on the right.*
 - 2. In this screen:
 - a. Change the **Number of Schedules** to 2. A second line, Schedule 2, displays on the screen.
 - b. Select Home for Schedule 1, and Away for Schedule 2.
 - c. Click Apply. The screen should match the following:



3. Click the **Home** schedule in the System Tree at left. *The weekly program for the Home mode displays on the right.*

- 4. Set the Home schedule properties:
 - a. Change the **Periods per Day** to 2
 - b. Set the Number of Weekly Programs to 2
 - c. Click on **Program 2** for Saturday and Sunday; click **Program 1** for all other days.
 - d. Click **Apply**. *The screen will look like the one shown below.*

📕 g!Demo : Conl	figurator			
System	Global Options	Schedule Layout : Home	;	
Interface	Communication Devices	Periods per Day Number of Weekly Programs	2 Periods per Da	ay 🔽
Security	Living Room	Select Days for each Weekly	Program	
Climate	Schedule Layout	Monday	Program 1	Program 2
and the second second	Away	Tuesday	Program 1	Program 2
Lighting	Thermostat Log	Wednesday	Program 1	Program 2
1.2251228	🕀 🔒 Bedroom	Thursday 🧲	Program 1	Program 2
Media	- Figure HVAC Units	Friday	Program 1	Program 2
Messaging	Custom Tabs	Saturday	Program 1	Program 2
meeseging	Interface Groups	Sunday	Program 1	Program 2
Video				
Irrigation				
Pool Control				
Input/Output				
UPS				
Event Mapper				
Content		Apply)	

- 5. Select the Living Room **Away** schedule in the System Tree. *The weekly program for the Away mode displays on the right.*
- 6. Set the Away schedule properties:
 - a. Set Periods per Day to 1
 - b. Set Number of Weekly Programs to 1
 - c. Click Apply. The screen will look like the one shown below.

📕 g!Demo : Co	onfigurator		_ _ ×
System	Climate System	Schedule Layout : Away	
Interface	☐ Sacommunication Devices ☐ Sacolimate ☐ Intermostats	Periods per Day Number of Weekly Programs	1 Period for whole Day 1 Program For Whole Week
Security	Living Room	Select Days for each Weekly P	Program
Climate	Occine Layout Occine	Tuesday	Program 1
Lighting	Intermostat Log Bedroom	Wednesday	Program 1
Media	El Generic HVAC Unit	Friday	Program 1
Messaging	Custom Tabs	Saturday Sunday	Program 1
Video			
Irrigation			
Pool Control			
Input/Output			
UPS			
Event Mapper			
Content		Apply)

- 7. In the System Tree, select Schedule Layout for the Bedroom thermostat.
- 8. Set Number of Schedules to 2, Home and Away.
- 9. Set up the Bedroom Home schedule as follows:
 - a. Set Periods per Day to 4
 - b. Set the Number of Weekly Programs to 2
 - c. Click on **Program 2** for Saturday and Sunday; click **Program 1** for all other days.
 - d. Click **Apply**. The screen will look like the one shown below.

g!Demo : Con	figurator				
System	Climate System	Schedule Layout : Home			
Interface	Communication Devices	Periods per Day Number of Weekly Programs	4 Periods p 2 Weekly P	oer Day rograms	•
Security	🔄 📕 Thermostats	Select Days for each Weekly I	[⊃] rogram		
Climate	Schedule Layout	Monday 🧲	Program 1	Program 2	
	🗌 🚯 Away	Tuesday	Program 1	Program 2	
Lighting	Pedroom	Wednesday	Program 1	Program 2	
Media	Schedule Layout	Friday	Program 1	Program 2	5
Magazina	B Home Away	Saturday	Program 1	Program 2	5
wessaging	Thermostat Log	Sunday	Program 1	Program 2	5
Video	Heating/Cooling Units				
Irrigation	Custom Tabs				
Pool Control					
Input/Output					
UPS					
Event Mapper					
Content		Apply)		

- 10. Select the Bedroom **Away** schedule in the System Tree, and set the properties as follows:
 - a. Set Periods per Day to 1
 - b. Set the Number of Weekly Programs to 1.
 - c. Click Apply.



Exercise 5: Check the Viewer

Overview In exercises 1-4, you used the Configurator to set up the Climate app. In exercises 5 and 6, you will check your configuration in the Viewer and use the Viewer to set the heating and cooling set points for each period in each thermostat's schedule.

How-to

- 1. From the glConnect Pro main screen, click Start Viewer. The Viewer interface displays the Home page.
- 2. Click the g! icon to access the main menu then select the **Climate** icon to show the available climate zones. Select the **Living Room** zone.





On this screen notice:

- The Heating setpoint is 60
- The Cooling setpoint is 85
- The Room Temperature is 68
- The thermostat and fan are running in Auto Mode
- Buttons at the bottom indicate and provide control for Fan state and Thermostat mode.
- Access is provided at the top to view the Schedules and History

3. Click the Up arrow next to the Heating Set Point to change the setting to 70 degrees.

g!g!Demo							
g!			Living Room			Ø Schedule	لللل HISTORY
				Cool			
		Room Temj	p				
			~				
		68	U	Heat			
				70°			
Fan Auto	o Fan Con	tinuous Sy	vstern Off	Heat Mode	Cool Mode	Auto	Mode
		2					

- Note that after a short pause the heat Setpoint will begin to blink indicating that it is actively heating.
- 4. Press and hold the Heat Mode button to change from auto mode to heat mode. (Note that in order to change mode you must press and hold the button for a few seconds. This feature helps prevent potentially dangerous accidental mode changes.)



Exercise 6: Check the Schedule tabs in the Viewer

Overview In this exercise you will check the Living Room and Bedroom schedules that configured in the previous exercises and adjust the period start times and set points.

How-to

1. Click the **Schedule** button at the top right of the screen. This brings up the schedule controls where the homeowner can adjust times and temperature for the thermostat schedule.



Note on this page

- Buttons on the bottom left control and indicate the schedule program status.
- Buttons on the bottom right are for controlling timed hold behavior.

2. Click the **Home Schedule** tab then click the **Mon, Tue, Wed Thu, Fri** tab at the top to bring up the Home Schedule for the Living Room weekday settings as shown below.

g!			Living	Room	1	ე темр	Ø Schedule	ЦЦЦ HISTORY
	HOME	SCHEDULE	_		1	WAY SCHEDU	E	
		MON, TUE, 1	WED, THU, FRI				SAT, SUN	
Day	• 7	:00 AM 🔺	C 001 74°		➡ Heat 68°		Fan Mode AUTO	
Night	• 9	:00 PM 🔺	Cool		➡ Heat		Fan Mode AUTO	
Run Pi	rogram	Permanent Ho	ld Tempor	rary Hold	-	Hold 3:49	l For):25	

Notice that for each period, Day and Night you can adjust:

- Start Time
- Cool Set Point
- Heat Set Point
- Fan State
- 3. Use the arrows to change the settings so that:
 - Day starts at 7:30am
 - Night starts at 10:00pm.
 - Day Cool setting is 74.
 - Fan is ON (will run all day).

These are settings for Monday - Friday. Your screen should look like the one shown below.

l giDemo										
g!	1		L	iving	Roor	n		၂ TEMP	Ø Schedule	ЦЦЦ HISTORY
	HOME S	CHEDULE	-				AW	AY SCHEDI	ULE	
MON, TUE, WED, THU, FRI								SAT, SUN		
Day	▼ 7:3	80 AM 🔺	-	Cool 74°		•	Heat 68°		▼ Fan Mod ON	e 🔺
Night	v 10:	00 PM 🔺	-	Cool 85°		•	Heat 60°		▼ Fan Mod AUTO	e 🔺
Run Progra	m F	Permanent Ho	ld	Tempora	iry Hold		▼	Ho 3:4	ld For 48:51	

- 4. Click the **Sat, Sun** button to display the weekend schedule. Change the settings so that:
 - a. Day starts at 8:00 AM
 - b. Night starts at 11:00 PM.

g!	J		Living	Room	1) TEMF	SCHEDULE	لللل HISTORY
	HOMES	SCHEDULE				AWAY SCHE	DULE	
		MON, TUE, W	VED, THU, FRI				SAT, SUN	
Day	• 8:	00 AM 🔺	▼ Cool 76°		➡ He 68	at 🔺	Fan Mod AUTO	e 🔺
Night	T 11	:00 PM 🔺	Cool		▼ He 60	at 🔺	Fan Mod AUTO	e 🔺
Run Pr	rogram	Permanent Hol	d Tempo	rary Hold			lold For 3:44:58	

5. Click the **Away Schedule** tab to display the **Living Room** schedule for when the house mode is set to Away.

 Note that there is just one Heating set point and one Cooling set point, and that all the days are the same. Click the arrows to set the Heating to 55 and the Cooling to 90. Your screen should look like the one shown below.



 Click the Thermostat icon at the top of the screen (circled above) to view all climate zones, then select the Bedroom icon to switch to the **Bedroom** thermostat.



8. Click the **Schedule** button and select the Home schedule. Note that here there are four periods per day, with **Monday-Friday** the same, and then **Saturday** and **Sunday** the same.



Exercise 7: Check the History in the Viewer

Overview

The History in the Viewer tracks historical information so that homeowner can see what has been happening with their system. Because the g!Demo has not been running for long, your history will be minimal. The screen shot below was taken from a live system.



Example Screen

Notes:

Notes:

Lesson 5 Configuring Lighting Systems



Overview

This lesson shows you how to configure a lighting system.

You will:

- Learn how lighting systems are organized in the Configurator.
- Use the Configurator to setup the Communication and Lighting Interfaces that represent the basic lighting hardware.
- Add switches and keypads to the configuration.
- Learn how to create a custom keypad for the Viewer interface.
- Learn how to create a custom interface layout for the Viewer interface.

Sample House

Our Sample House and attached garage will be configured with ten lighting loads and one physical keypad. The loads will be distributed as follows:

- Main House- Four dimmers and a physical keypad
- Theater- Three Dimmers
- Garage and Outside- Three Dimmers

Requirements

• A PC running g!Demo and g!Connect Pro.

-OR-

• ELAN Controller and g!Connect Pro.

Lighting Integration Overview

Overview The following diagram shows the equipment in a typical lighting system schematically, illustrating the components that are important to the ELAN controller. The lines drawn between the lighting controller and the dimmers, switch and keypad represent the communication link between the controller and these devices. These links can be created using low-voltage cables, RF signals or the power lines themselves, depending upon the lighting system.



Integrating a lighting system with the g! software will provide the homeowner access to their system through the Viewer. This will enable them to:

- Turn loads on and off
- Set the brightness of loads controlled by dimmers
- Actuate pre-programmed scenes
- Set up a lighting schedule
- View status of the loads in the lighting system

A note about license versions:

Included Lighting Functionality: Supports all lighting systems with which the g! software integrates. This version is intended for smaller systems and allows control of up to sixteen lighting loads or system scenes.

Lighting PRO App: Supports all lighting systems with which the g! software integrates. This version allows for control of all available loads and keypads in the lighting system.
- *Terms* The following terms are used in the Configurator to describe the equipment in a lighting system:
 - **Communication Device:** The method the g! software will use to communicate with an external device, including information about the connection type and protocol. In the overview diagram, the communication device uses one of the built-in COM ports on the ELAN controller.
 - Lighting Interface: The lighting controller or interface module.
 - Switch / Dimmer: The device that switches the load (turns lights on, off, or dim/brighten).
 - **Keypad:** Typically a wall-mounted controller with several **Scene** buttons. In some cases, a keypad can also switch a load.
 - **Virtual Keypad:** A software representation of the wall-mounted keypad that can also be used to control lighting loads.
 - **Custom Keypad:** A software keypad that is configured to provide a more personalized experience for the user such as access to user-preferred controls, or preferred buttons, etc.
 - Custom Tab. A custom interface page that can optionally be added to the lighting Viewer interface. The custom interface can be configured with any of the available controls.
 - Scene. A group of switches and dimmers that turn on to a specific level or turn off from a single command.
- *How-To* To integrate a lighting system with ELAN:
 - Add the Communication Device.
 - Add the Lighting Interface
 - Discover Devices to add the lighting loads and keypads.
 - Organize the Viewer interface with the desired keypads, custom interfaces, and custom controls.

Once the lighting interface has been added, the g! software is able (in most cases) to automatically import all of the lighting loads and keypads. This is accomplished by using the **Discover Devices** or **Read Config File** feature in the lighting interface.

Exercise 1: Add Communication Device

Overview In the following steps you will add a Communication Device to communicate with the lighting system. The communication device is the bridge between the g! software and the light switches, and is where you specify how the system is physically connected and what communication protocol should be used.

Note: Actual system setup may be different depending upon which lighting system is installed on site. Refer to the *Integration Notes* for the particular lighting systems for details.

How-To

 Start the Configurator, click the Lighting tab at left, then click Communication Devices, as shown below:

Sustam	Lighting System	
System	🗌 🕵 Communication Devices 🛛 🔹 🕨	
1-1- <i>1</i>	📃 🍤 Lighting Interfaces	
Interface	🗌 🧧 Keypad Interfaces	
	Customizable Scenes	
Security	🛨 📕 Keypad Templates	
	🛨 🊯 Schedule	
Climate	🗌 📑 Custom Tabs	
	Interface Groups	
Lighting		

- Right-click Communication Device and select Add New Communication Device. In the dialog box:
 - a. Select Serial Port in the Type drop-down box
 - b. Select **Standard Connection** in the Communication Type dropdown box.
 - c. Enter "Lighting" as the Device Name.
 - d. Click OK.

Add New Communicat	ion Device	
Device Name	Lighting	
Туре	Serial Port	•
Device		~
Communication Type	Standard Connection	•
	Cancel OK	

Quick Reference	e: Add New Communication Device
Device Name	Enter a name for the external device. This can be any name, but should be descriptive so that you can identify this specific device in the Configurator. DO NOT leave this field set to "New Device".
Туре	The type of connection you are using, such as serial port or Ethernet.
Device	This field will populate only if needed, depending on the selected Type.
Communication Type	This is the protocol of the communication. See the <i>Integration</i> <i>Note</i> for the specific lighting system for more information.

- 3. Select the **Communication Device** in the system tree as shown below.
- 4. In the properties window at right, select the desired **COM Port** (NONE in the example below), then click **Apply**.

Note: The drop-down menu only shows the ports that are available. If you are running g!Demo on your laptop you will only see available ports on the laptop. Leave the selection set to **NONE** if you are using **g!Demo**.

System	 Lighting System Scommunication Devices 	Communication I	Device: Lighting
Interface	Set Lighting	Name	Lighting
	Lighting interfaces	System #	6989
Security	Customizable Scenes	Device Type	Serial Port / Standard Connection
01	🕂 📕 Keypad Templates	Location	< SELECT >
Climate	+ 🗱 Schedule	Enable Sharing	No
Lighting	Custom Tabs	Sharing Port	
		COM Port	
Media		Protocol	P0232
Managing		Baud Rate	9600
wessaging		Flow Control	None
Video		Parity	None
		Data Bits	8
Irrigation		Stop Bits	1
Pool Control			
Input/Output			
UPS			
Event Mapper			
Content			
Floor Plan		Apply	

Exercise 2: Add the Lighting System and Discover Devices

Overview Before beginning this exercise, be sure that you have completed Exercise 1, *Add the Communication Device.* You will need to associate the communication device with the lighting device in this exercise. For most lighting systems, the names of the devices will be populated automatically.

Note: Actual system setup may be different depending upon which lighting system is installed on site. Refer to the *Integration Notes* for the particular lighting system for more details.

How-To

- 1. On the Lighting tab, right click on Lighting Interfaces and select Add New Lighting Interface.
- 2. Select Virtual Lighting Device Controller, and then click OK



3. Verify that the Communication Device is set to Lighting.

System	Lighting System	Lighting Interface · Vir	tual Lighting Device Controller
- ,	Communication Devices		
Interface	Lighting	Name	Virtual Lighting Device Controller
	Lighting Interfaces	System #	1404
Security	Virtual Lighting Device Controller	Device Type	Virtual Lighting Device Controller
, í	Kevpad Interfaces	Location	SELECT >
Climate	Customizable Scenes	Location	
	🛨 📕 Keypad Templates	Communication Device	
Lighting	C 🚯 Schedule		
	🔄 📴 Custom Tabs		
Media	Interface Groups		
Messaging			
Video			
Video			
Irrigation			
ingation			
Pool Control			
Input/Output			
UPS			
Event Mapper		Apply	Discover Devices
		C	

 Click **Discover Devices** at the bottom of the screen. After a slight pause, the lighting loads and keypads will be displayed in the System Tree.

Once the Discover Devices process is complete, there will be ten dimmers and one keypad in the configuration.



Check When you've finished the configuration, check your work in the Viewer.

1. From the g!Connect Pro main screen, click **Start Viewer**.

Viewer Interface

the

- 2. From the homepage click the **g!** icon to access the main menu then click the **Lighting** icon.
- 3. You will see the "Master" keypad listed in the Configurator.



Note: The Configurator adds Viewer interface pages for each keypad by default. Note that individual loads (switches and dimmers) don't automatically display in the interface.

Note: The names of the buttons that display in the virtual keypad can be edited. See Exercise 3, *Create a Custom Keypad* for more information on editing the button text.

Exercise 3: Create a Custom Keypad

Overview Before beginning this exercise, be sure that you have completed Exercise 2, *Add the Lighting System and Discover Devices.*

In this exercise, we'll create the graphic layout for a simple three-button keypad to control lighting scenes in the theater.

- *How-To* 1. In the Configurator **Lighting** tab, right-click **Keypad Interfaces** in the System Tree.
 - 2. Click Add New Keypad. The Add New Lighting Keypad window displays.
 - a. Type "Theater" in the Keypad Name box.
 - b. Select Virtual Keypad from the Interface Device drop-down list.
 - c. Select Empty Virtual Keypad as the Keypad Type.

Keypad Name	Theater	
Interface Device	Virtual Keypad	•
Keypad Type		
CentraLite 2 Button CentraLite 3 Button CentraLite 4 Button EDT i-ON-MB		^
Empty Virtual Keypad	1	2
GRX-4/8-IT HomeWorks Default HRT-6LRL-A HR-VCRXSW HWI-2B		~
Lighting Device		Y

- d. Click **OK**. An empty custom keypad bezel displays in the properties window. This keypad is now part if the system and can be seen in the Viewer.
- 3. In the properties window, click on the new keypad bezel once to select itnotice that the keypad is outlined in yellow. Click the blank keypad again and notice that the yellow outline turns to red. A red outline indicates that the keypad can be moved or resized.

4. Click and hold the mouse over the red line on the left side of the keypad. The cursor will turn into a double-headed arrow, indicating that you can click and drag to resize the selected object. Click and hold your left mouse button, then move your mouse to the right to make the blank keypad bezel take up about half of the black background:



5. Right-click inside the empty keypad at (or near) the spot where you want to add a button and select **Add New Control** from the pop up menu. *A new control appears on the keypad.*



- 6. Select the New Control by clicking on it with your mouse. *The Lighting Keypad Button properties window displays.*
- 7. Type House Lights in the Text field.

ext	House Lights	Rad	ius ——	
/pe	Scene	•		
	Press Commands	A	ld Command	Delete Command
utton	rices commands			
Interfa	ice Device	Sub-Device	Action	
Interfa Jutton I	nce Device	Sub-Device	Action	Delete Command.

8. Repeat steps 3 and 4, adding two more buttons for a total of three. Name these buttons **Show Movie** and **All Off**.

- 9. Resize the House Lights button.
 - a. Click the House Lights button. *It will be surrounded by a yellow line, indicating that it is the selected object.*
 - b. Move the mouse cursor over the yellow line on the left or right hand side.

The cursor will become a double headed arrow.

- c. Click and hold the mouse button. *The yellow line will turn red, indicating that the button can be resized.*
- d. Stretch the button horizontally until you can read all of the words "House Lights".
- 10. Center the House Lights button in the keypad.
 - a. Place the cursor to the center of the button.

The double headed arrow will become a four way arrow.

- Click and hold the mouse button again, and drag the button so that it is centered left and right, and in the top third of the keypad.
- 11. Align the buttons on the keypad.
 - a. Click the All Off button to select it, then hold the CTRL keyboard key and click the Show Movie and House Lights buttons to select them. Individual selected button will be highlighted in vollow, and all three will be surrounded b





yellow, and all three will be surrounded by a green box.

- b. Right-click the All Off button and select Align Left Edges. All of the buttons will line up with the left side edge of the House Lights button. Since the House Lights button was the last one selected in the group it will be the master that the other controls will reference in the following steps.
- c. Right-click the **All Off** button and select **Make Same Width**. All of the buttons will become the same width as the House Lights button.
- d. Right-click the All Off button and select **Make Same Height**. *All of the buttons will become the same height as the House Lights button.*
- e. Right-click the All Off button and select **Space Evenly (Y)**. *This will* space the buttons evenly on the Y-axis (vertically).



Your keypad should now look similar to this:

A few notes about working with the keypad control:

- The last keypad control selected is the "master" for right-click options such as resizing and centering.
- The keypad itself is resizable.
- To move a control, click and drag it to its new location.
- To resize a control, click the red border and drag it in the desired direction.
- Use the radius slide control to make the control more or less round.
- Selected item(s) can be moved "bumped" a pixel at a time using the keyboard arrows.

Lighting Key	pad Button Properties Reference
Text	The word(s) that will appear on the button in the user interface.
Туре	Selects the button action. Choices are:
	Toggle - Changes the load or scene from one state to another (on/off)
	Momentary - Typically used for dimming, this will allow configuration of a lighting action based on press and release, such as begin dim/end dim.
	Scene - Activates a group of lighting devices to a pre-configured level. In contrast to the toggle button, pressing a scene button a second time will re-issue the same scene command.
Radius	Click and drag this slide control to the right to make the corners of the button more round; to the left to make them more square.
Button Press Commands	Action to be executed upon button press. Only applies to Momentary button type.
Button Release Commands	Action to be executed upon button release.

Exercise 4: Add Scenes to Keypad Buttons

Overview Before beginning this exercise, be sure that you have completed Exercise 2, *Add the Lighting System and Discover Devices* and Exercise 3, *Add a Custom Keypad.* You will need to associate the lighting loads added in Exercise 2 with the keypad buttons added in Exercise 3.

In this exercise, you will assign lighting loads to turn on at specified levels when buttons on the Custom Keypad are pressed.

How-To

- 1. In the Configurator, Lighting tab, under **Keypad Interfaces**, select the **Theater** keypad interface.
- 2. Click the **House Lights** button on the keypad. *The Lighting Keypad Button window will open.*

Eighte	ng Keypad Butto	n				×
Text	House Lights		Radiu	s 		4
Туре	Scene	•				
Button	Press Commands		Add	Command	Delete Command	
Interf	ace Device	Sub-Devi	ice	Action		
Puttor	Palaaaa Common	da	Add	Command	Delete: Command	
Button	Release Command	ds Sub-Devi	Add	Command	Delete Command	
Button	Release Command	ds Sub-Devi	Add	Command	Delete Command	
Button	Release Command	ds Sub-Devi	Add	Command	Delete Command	

- 3. Create a scene for the **House Lights** button.
 - a. Verify the **Type** is set to **Scene**.
 - b. Click the Add Command... button in the Button Release Commands section. The Add Component Lighting Scene window opens.
 - c. From the Lighting Device column, select Overhead Lights, then from the Action column, select Set Level to 100% and click OK.

ighting Device	Action	
Garage	Off	~
Guest Bedroom	Set Level to 100 %	
(itchen	Set Level to 99 %	
iving Room	Set Level to 98 %	
Aaster Bedroom	Set Level to 97 %	
Outside Lights	Set Level to 96 %	
Overhead Lights	Set Level to 95 %	
Porch	Set Level to 94 %	
Rope Lights	Set Level to 93 %	
Sconces	Set Level to 92 %	
	Set Level to 91 %	
	Set Level to 90 %	
	Set Level to 89 %	~

- d. Click the Add Command... again. Select Sconces in the Lighting Devices column and set the sconce level to 100%. Do the same for Rope Lights.
- e. Close the Lighting Keypad Button properties window.

ightir ext	House Lights	Radius	-	-1
ype	Scene]		_
Button	Press Commands	Add	Sommand	Delete Command
Interf	ace Device	Sub-Device	Action	
Interfa Button	ace Device Release Commands	Sub-Device	Action	Delete Command
Interfa Button	ace Device Release Commands ace Device	Sub-Device	Action	Delete Command
Interf Button Interfa Virtua	ace Device Release Commands ace Device I Lighting Device Cont	Sub-Device Add i Sub-Device Overhead Lights	Action	Delete Command
Interf Button Interf Virtua Virtua	ace Device Release Commands ace Device Lighting Device Cont Lighting Device Cont	Sub-Device Add I Sub-Device Overhead Lights Sconces	Action Command Action Set Level to 1 Set Level to 2	Delete Command

- 4. Select the **Show Movie** button, and create a scene for this button as follows:
 - a. Set the Overhead and Sconces to "Off"
 - b. Set the Rope Lights to 30%.
 - c. Close the Lighting Keypad Button properties window.
- 5. Select the **All Off** button. For this scene, set all three loads we have been working with to "Off". Close the Lighting Keypad Button properties window.

Exercise 5: Create a Custom Interface

Overview Before beginning this exercise, be sure that you have completed Exercise 2, *Add the Lighting System and Discover Devices,* Exercise 3, *Add a Custom Keypad,* and Exercise 4, *Add Scenes to Keypad Buttons.*

In this exercise, you will create a custom user interface that includes a keypad and some individual lighting controls.

When creating custom User interfaces for a homeowner, it is important to note that you need to create a separate layout for each interface that the homeowner will be using to access their system, such as an in-wall touch screen and an iPhone.

- How-To
- 1. From the Configurator, Lighting tab, right-click **Custom Tabs** in the System Tree, then select **Add New Custom Tab**.
- 2. Type "Custom Tab" in the Name field.
- 3. Click the + sign next to Custom Tab, then select 800 x 600 Layout (Touchscreen).





- 4. Add the Custom Keypad created in previous exercises to the custom tab.
 - a. In the blank area in the properties window, right-click and select Add New Control. *The Add New Control window opens.*
 - b. Select Lighting Keypad from the Control Type list, and then click OK. A preview box labeled Lighting Keypad will appear on the page.

Control Type Intercom Control (Global) Light Dimmer Control Light Preset Control Light Rocker Control Light Rocker Control (One-Way) Light Scene Button (Customizable)	^
Intercom Control (Global) Light Dimmer Control Light Preset Control Light Rocker Control Light Rocker Control (One-Way) Light Scene Button (Customizable)	^
Light Dimmer Control Light Preset Control Light Rocker Control Light Rocker Control (One-Way) Light Scene Button (Customizable)	
Light Preset Control Light Rocker Control Light Rocker Control (One-Way) Light Scene Button (Customizable)	
Light Rocker Control Light Rocker Control (One-Way) Light Scene Button (Customizable)	
Light Scene Button (Customizable)	
Light Coope Butten (Exem Kouned)	
Light Scene Button (From Keybag)	
Light Switch Control	-
Light Toggle Control	
Lighting Global Control	
Lighting Keypad	
Numeric Text	
Output Momentary Button	
Dicture from Internet	
notore nominiternet	

- c. Select the box to display the Lighting Keypad Properties window.
- d. Select **Theater** from the **Connect To** drop-down list. This will associate the Theater keypad you created in Exercise 3 with the keypad control on the custom page.

Name	Lighting Keypad		Picture
Text Color		Select Color	🛛 🥅 Use Default
Face Color		Select Color	🛛 🗖 Use Default
🗖 Transpa	rent (Requires Backg	round Texture)	
Radius			Default
Shading	Ī		Default
Shading	<u> </u>		Default
Style	Show Bounding	Border	
Style Text Size	Show Bounding 💌 12 pt	Align	

e. Close the **Lighting Keypad Properties** window, and click **Apply** at the bottom of the screen.

f. Click the small control again and resize it so that it fills most of the height of the screen. Move it to the left side as shown below.

🞒 g!Demo : Cor	figurator	
System	Lighting System System System System	Custom Tab Layout : Custom Tab
Interface	\$ \$	
Security	Virtual Lighting Device Controller Kitchen	
Climate	Guest Bedroom	
Lighting	Overhead Lights	
Media	Rope Lights Garage	Unphrings Resymptot
Messaging	U Outside Lights	
Video	🖃 📕 Keypad Interfaces	
Irrigation	Customizable Scenes	
Pool Control	Keypad Templates Schedule Gustam Taba	
Input/Output	Custom Tab Solution Tab Solution Tab	
UPS	 800 x 480 Layout (Touchscreen) 240 x 320 Layout (iPhone/iPod Touch 	
Event Mapper	☐ III 320 x 240 Layout (iPhone/iPod Touc ☐ III 400 x 300 Layout (Group Mode)	
Content	Interface Groups	
Floor Plan		Apply

Note: See Exercise 3, *Add a Custom Keypad* for instructions on resizing and moving custom controls.

- 5. Add buttons for the Garage, Porch, and Outside Lights to the interface to turn these lights on and off.
 - a. Right-click in the open area to the right of the keypad control you just created, and select **Add New Control**.
 - b. Select Light Toggle Control, and then click OK.

Add New Cor	itrol	×
Name	Light Toggle Cont	irol
Control Type		
Light Switch (Control	~
Light Toggle C	ontrol	
Lighting Globs	Control	
Lighting Keyp	ad	
Numeric Text	toru Button	
Output Worler	Button	
Picture from In	ternet	
Picture from S	hare	
Pool Circuit Su	immary	
Pool System S	ummary	
Region (Raise	d)	
Region (Sunke	n)	
Security Pane	l Keypad	
Shade 3 Butto	n	~
JShada Draad		
	Cancel	ок

- c. Select the Light Toggle Control so that it is highlighted in yellow, and do the following:
 - Move the control to the right of the Keypad, and move it up to align with the top of the keypad.
 - Name the control "Garage Lights".
 - Select Garage in the Connect To drop-down list.

Light Toggle	e Control P	roperties		×
Name	Garage Lig	hts		Picture
Text Color		Select C	olor	Use Default
Face Color		Select C	olor 🛛 🔽	🖣 Use Default
Transpar	ent (Require	s Background Textur	re)	
Radius				_ Default
Shade In	ī—			Default
Shade Out	Ī			Default
Style		Border		*
Text Size	12 pt	✓ Align		Ŧ
Text Quality		Funct.		Ŧ
Connect To	Garage			-

- d. Add two more Light Toggle Controls underneath the Garage Lights button- one for Porch Lights and one for Outside Lights. Connect each to the appropriate load.
- e. Use right-click options to align the left edge of the buttons and space them evenly on the Y-axis. *At this point, the Custom interface should look something like the example below.*

Custom Tab Layout : Cus	stom Tab
	Garage Lights
	Porch Lights
Lighting Keysad	Outside Lights

- 6. Add three Light Dimmer Controls to the Custom interface to control the rope lights, sconces and overhead lights.
 - a. Right-click in the open area below the toggle controls and select **Add New Control**. *The Add New Control window opens*.
 - b. Select Light Dimmer Control from the list, and then click OK.

Add New Co	ntrol	
Name Control Type	Light Dimmer Control	
Intercom Cont Light Dimmer Light Preset C Light Rocker of Light Rocker of Light Scene E Light Scene E Light Scene E Light Scene E Light Scene G Lighting Globa Lighting Globa Lighting Keyp	trol (Global) Control Control Control (One-Way) Button (Customizable) Button (From Keypad) Control Control al Control ad	
Output Momer Output Toggle Picture from In Dicture from 9	ntary Button e Button nternet Cancel	ок

- c. Select the Light Dimmer Control that is highlighted in yellow and in the Light Dimmer Properties window:
- Name the control "Rope Lights"
- Select Rope Lights from the Connect To drop-down list.

Light Dimm	er Control Prope	erti	es			×
Name	Rope Lights				Pic	sture
Text Color			Select C	olor	🗆 Us	e Default
Face Color			Select C	olor	🔽 Us	e Default
🖵 Transpar	rent (Requires Bac	kgr	ound Textu	re)		
Radius						Default
Shading	ī——					Default
	-					
Style	Drogress Tune	Ţ	Border			~
01,10	Progress Type		Doradi			
Text Size	12 pt	-	Align	ļ		<u>*</u>
Text Quality		¥	Funct.			*
Connect To	Rope Lights					•

- d. Add two more dimmer controls below the Rope Lights dimmer- one connected to the **Sconces**, and connected to the **Overhead Lights**.
- e. Use the right-click menu to resize and align all the three dimmer controls along the left edge and space them evenly on the Y-axis. At this point, the Custom interface should look something like the example below.

stom Tab
Garage Lights
Porch Lights
Outside Lights
Rope Lights
Sconces
Overhead Lights
Overhead Lights

When you've finished creating the custom interface, check your work in the Viewer.

the Viewer Interface

Check

 Start the Viewer, from the homepage click the g! icon to access the main menu then click the lighting icon to access the available lighting interfaces. There should be 3 interfaces shown.



2. Click the **Theater** icon. You should see the three button keypad in the center.



3. Click the light bulb to return to the available lighting interfaces then click the **Custom Tab**. You should see the Theater Keypad on the left, the toggle controls on the upper right, and the dimmer controls on the lower right.



Exercise 6: Copy the Custom Tab to a Different Resolution

Overview Before beginning this exercise, be sure that you have completed Exercise 5, *Create a Custom Tab.* In this exercise, you will copy that interface to a new resolution for use on a different type of interface device, an iPhone for example.

When creating custom user interfaces for a homeowner, it is important to note that you need to create a layout for each interface that the homeowner will be using to access their system, such as an in-wall touch screen and an iPhone.

- How-To1. From the Configurator, Lighting tab, select the Custom Tab created in the previous exercise. Expand the resolution options for this tab if not already expanded.
 - 2. Click the 240 X 320 (iPhone/iPod Touch Layout Portrait).
 - Click the arrow at the end of the 240 X320 Layout line and select Copy Layout from 800 X 600 Layout.



4. Select Yes in the warning message that displays. *There currently is no existing interface for the 240X320 layout, so it's OK to overwrite it.*



5. The custom tab displays in the 240 X 320 resolution.

Note: The custom keypad, buttons, and dimmers are all present, and are already configured as they were for the 800 X 600 resolution but since this interface is smaller some adjustments may be required.

Custom Tab Layout : Custom Tab	Custom Tab Layout : Custom Tab
	Garage Lights
Garage Li	Porch Lights
Porch Lig	Lighting Keyned Outside Lights
Califing Xeypod	
Rop	Rope Lights
Sco	Sconces
Ove	Overhead Lights

6. Use any of the methods described in the previous exercises to rearrange the interface to be more usable for the homeowner.

For example:

- Shorten button names
- Resize the buttons
- Move the buttons and/or keypad

Exercise 7: Set up a Schedule in the Viewer

Overview Lighting scheduling is set up in two parts. First, you create a framework or foundation for the lighting schedules in the Configurator. Then the actual scheduling is set in the Viewer, based on the framework created in the Configurator.

Note: You may choose to hide or show the Lighting Schedule interface from certain touch screens using the Touch Screen Options on the Interface tab in the Configurator. See steps below for details.

Lighting schedule framework is based on House Modes, such as Home or Away. You may choose to create a schedule for each mode individually; create one schedule for all modes; create a specific number of schedules where more than one House Modes will share certain settings, or disable scheduling entirely.

Lighting Periods are then defined by name in the Configurator to provide different times of the day that Lighting schedule changes are executed. Finally, in the Viewer you will define the time of day for each Lighting Period and add lighting commands to be issued at that time.

In the following example we will setup the system to use two different schedules, one for when the system is in Home mode and the second for when it is in Away mode. For each schedule we will configure three lighting periods.

How-To To configure the number of Schedules to build your framework around:

1. Navigate to the Lighting tab in the Configurator and select Schedule in the System Tree.



 To edit the number of schedules, click the Number of Schedules field. Select 2 Schedules.

Schedule Layout : Lighting \$	System
Number of Schedules	0 (Scheduling Disabled) 📃 💌
Select House Modes for Schedules	0 (Scheduling Disabled) 1 (One Schedule for all Modes) <mark>2 Schedules</mark>

 If some schedules will be shared by more than 1 House Mode, select the appropriate number of schedules.
 If you want to set a unique schedule for each House Mode, select the same number of schedules as you have House Modes.
 (In the above example, we would choose 2 Schedules)

• To use one Schedule for all House Modes, select 1 Schedule.

- To disable Scheduling on the Lighting tab, select 0 schedules.
- 3. Select Home for schedule 1 and Away for schedule 2 then click **Apply**.

Schedule Layout : Lig	ghting System	8	
Number of Schedules	2 Schedul	es	•
Select House Modes for S	chedules		
Schedule 1	Home	Away	
Schedule 2	Home	Away	

- In this example, the Home mode will use Schedule 1, and the Away mode will use Schedule 2.
- 4. Click on **Home** under Schedule in the system tree to add two more periods to the schedule.



 By default, a Morning period is auto-populated. You may Add New Periods, Delete Periods, and re-order periods using the Move Up/Down buttons. Note that this only creates the framework/naming for schedule periods. The setup for time of day etc. will occur in the Viewer. 5. Click **Add New Period** and enter the name Evening in the window then click **OK**.

Name	Evening	
	Cancel	ок

6. Repeat the step above to add another period and name it Late Night. Your screen should look as below.

System System	Lighting Schedule:	Home	
Lighting System Lighting System Lighting carries Lighting Interfaces Virtual Lighting Device Controller Virtual Lighting Device Controller Virtual Lights Device Controller Living Room Userhead Lights Sconces Rope Lights Garage Outside Lights Forch Keypad Interfaces Master Keypad Interfaces Master Keypad Interfaces Keypad Interfaces Keypad Interfaces Keypad Templates Away Away	Lighting Schedule: Lighting Periods Morning Evening Late Night	Home Add New Period Defete Period Move Up Move Down	

7. Repeat the steps above to add three periods to the Away schedule, Dusk, Evening, and Late Night for a total of four periods as below.



Now that the framework for the Lighting Scheduler is complete you will configure which screens will have access to edit and view the lighting schedule user interface.

8. Click the Interface tab to access the touch screen options then click the + next to the Windows touch screen in the list.



- 9. Click on the **Tab Config Lighting System** in the system tree to configure the visible lighting devices for your PC.
- 10. Select the **Builtin: Schedule** item listed in the Available Tabs section then click **Add Tab** and click **Apply** to activate the schedule user interface.

🛃 g!Demo∶Con	figurator			<u>- ×</u>
System	Interface	Tab Layout Windows: Lig	hting System	
Interface	Interface Devices Touch Screen Options	Default Tab Navigate By Group	SELECT >	
Security	Default Windows	Navigate to Default Page First	No	
Climate	User Interface	Enable Page Swipe	No	
Lighting	Tab Config: Security System	Available Tabs		/isible Tabs
Media	Tab Config: Media System			KEYPAD: Master
Messaging	Tab Config: Messaging	Ac	ld Tab >>	INTERFACE: Cus KEYPAD: Theate
Video	A Tab Config: Pool Control Home Pages	<< F	Remove Tab	BUILTIN, Schedur
Rool Control			Move Up	
Input/Output		M	ove Down	
UPS	System Images			
Event Mapper				
Content		Apply		
)

In the next steps you will use the Viewer Lighting Scheduler user interface to configure the lighting commands and the times they will be executed.

- 11. Start the Viewer, click the **g!** icon to access the main menu then click the lighting icon to access the available lighting zones.
- 12. Click the **Schedule** icon to access the Lighting Schedule page.

g! g!Demo						
g!		AI	l Lighting			
	Master	Custom Tat	o Theat	er	Schedule	
	$\mathbf{\hat{v}}$					
	0%	0%	0%		Morning 6:20a-6:20a	
					0'509-0'509	
	Uo\°	0.0				
g! g!Demo					0	
S:	ť	8	Schedule		HOME	AWAY
Mornii Sunrise	ng		Ø (+	Taat
		N	o Commands	er Later	Commanu	Test
Evenin	ıg					
Sunrise		N	o Commande			
			o commanus			
Late N Sunrise	ight					
		N	o Commands			

- Notice at the top right you can select to view or edit either configured schedule, with the name depicting the House Modes using that schedule.
- In the main window below that is an area for each scheduled period showing its name and the time it is set to run. By default, all schedules are set to **Sunrise**.
- For each Period there are controls to adjust the time type, time, add commands to the period, and test the schedule.

- 13. Configure the start times for each period for the Home Mode. Set the Morning period to be 30 minutes after sunrise, the Evening to be 15 minutes before sunset, and the Late Night to be at 11:30pm.
 - a. Click the **Time Type** button on the Morning period to cycle through the choices until Sunrise is selected. Then click the right arrow (later) twice to set the morning period 30 minutes after sunrise.
 - b. Repeat the step above to set the Evening period to be 15 minutes before sunset and the Late Night to use the clock at 11:30pm. Your screen should now look like the one below.

gibellio								
<u>g!</u>	2		Sche	dule			ЮМЕ	(C) AWA
Morning Sunrise (+) 0:30								
			No Com	mands				
Evening Sunset (-) 0:15								
			No Com	mands				
Late Night			e	Ð	•		+	
Clock 11:30 PM			Time	Туре	Earlier	Later	Command	Test
			No Com	mande				

- 14. Click on the Morning period then click the **+ Command** button to open the **Add Commands** page.
- 15. Click the **Switches** tab, select **Porch** light then **Off** and click **+ Add** to configure the porch light to turn off in the morning period.
- 16. Click **Done** in top left to exit the Add Commands page.

Sunrise (+) 0:3	KEYPADS	SWITCHES	Test
Porch	Device	Command	
Evening Sunset (-) 0:15	Kitchen		
Outside Lights	Guest Bedroom		
Purch	Overhead Lights		
Late Nigh ^{Clock 11:30} P	Sconces Rope Lights		
Outside Lights	Outside Lights		
	Porch		

- 17. Repeat the above steps to add the **Porch Lights-On Full** and the **Outside Lights-Go to 70%** to the **Evening** period.
- Repeat the steps above to add the Outside Lights Turn Off to the Late Night period. Your Home Schedule should now look like the screen below.

g!Demo					
g! 💡	Schedu	le		() Home	Ø away
Morning					
Sunrise (+) 0:30					
Porch	Off				
Evening Sunset (-) 0:15					
Outside Lights	Got	o 70 %			
Porch	On F	ull			
Late Night Clock 11:30 PM	() Time Tv	e Earlier	Later	+ Command	► Test
Outside Lights	Off				

- 19. Repeat the steps above to add the **Away** schedule as follows.
 - Morning: Sunrise +30 min: Porch Off
 - Dusk: Sunset -15 min: Porch On Full, Outside Lights Go to 70%
 - Evening: 8pm: Living Room, Kitchen, Master Bedroom all On Full
 - Late Night: 11:30pm: Living Room, Kitchen, Master Bedroom, Outside Lights Turn Off

[glDemo		1					_	
g!			Schedu	ule		Ю	D me	Ø AWAY
Outside Ligh	ıts		Go to	70 %				
Evening Clock 8:00	PM							
Living Room	1		On Fu	11				
Kitchen			On Fu	II				
Master Bedr	room		On Fu	I				
Late Nig	yht		\bigcirc	•		+		
Clock 11:30	PM		Time Type	Earlier	Later	Command	Tes	t
Living Room	1		Off					
Kitchen			Off					
Master Bedr	room		Off					
Outside Ligh	ıts		Off					

Notes:	
--------	--

Lesson 6 IR Control



Overview

You will:

- Learn how to configure a Global Cache for IR Control.
- Learn how to use the GC-IRL to learn IR codes directly into the g! software.
- Learn how to check, test and optimize an IR device.
- Understand Universal Functions and how they apply to IR devices and Interfaces.
- Import an ELAN IRF from the Common Resource Library.
- Import HomeLogic HIR file.
- Learn how to configure the built-in TV Channel Favorites interface.
- Add IR Controlled Sources.
- Add IR Controlled Displays.
- Learn how to export and import IR settings.

Requirements

• A PC running g!Demo and g!Connect Pro.

-or-

• ELAN Controller and g!Connect Pro.

Overview

Overview In this lesson you will add IR controlled devices to the Configurator. An IR Device is set up on the Input/Output tab of the Configurator and includes all of the IR codes that are required for control of the device. The IR code set that is added in the Input/Output tab is used as a code database by the rest of the system.

IR controlled sources in the g! software require an IR Device and a customizable interface. IR controlled displays in the g! software require an IR Device and a customizable Generic Display.

IR Devices may also be used for control of unsupported zone controllers or non-AV equipment, though it is strongly recommended to use supported 2-way zone controllers.

In the following Exercises, you will add IR controlled sources and displays to Configurator.

The following diagram shows how the g! software communicates with IR Controlled source equipment schematically. The diagram includes the components that are important to the ELAN controller:



Terms

The following terms are used in the Configurator:

- IR Device: The IR device contains all pertinent information for a device being controlled by IR. This includes settings such as toggle bits and all IR codes.
- IR Code: The container for the specific hex (CCF) code that is sent to issue a command via IR. IR Codes also contain settings for the number of repeats and Universal Function, and information on the carrier frequency of the code.
- **Default Code Set**: The "template" of code blanks to use as a starting point when learning IR codes. Default code sets contain a list of codes with appropriate Universal Functions for you to learn codes into.
- IR Sender: The port an IR emitter is connected to, and codes should be sent out of by default. IR devices typically have a **Default Sender** selected.
- Interface: The customizable button layout that makes up the user interface in the Viewer to issue IR commands to the IR controlled devices.
- **Control:** A control is an object such as a button or group of buttons that can be added or removed to the user interface.
- **Universal Function:** A pointer used to map controls on an interface to their associated commands in the IR device.

How-to To integrate an IR Device:

- Add the Global Cache device to send IR
- Add the IR Device
- Learn or import the IR codes for the device
 - IR Codes can be learned directly into the g! software using the Global Cache GC-IRL tool
 - o IR Codes may be imported from:
 - The Common Resource Library
 - ELAN IRF format files
 - HomeLogic HIR files
- Optimize and test IR Codes
- Backup the IR Device (if desired)
- For sources:
 - o Add the Interface
 - Customize the Interface (as needed)
 - Configure the Zone Controller for the sources and interfaces (See the lessons on Distributed AV and Home Theater for details)
- For Displays:
 - o Add a Generic Video Display
 - o Map IR commands to display
 - Add the Display to a zone on the Zone Controller (See the lessons on Distributed AV and Home Theater for details)

Exercise 1: Configure a Global Cache for IR Control

Overview The Global Cache is an important part of many AV systems. It is an Ethernet device that allows the g! software to send IR commands to various system components. Adding the Global Cache to the Configurator is covered in the following steps.

Note: This exercise can be followed if you are running g!Demo or if you have an actual Global Cache powered up and on your network. See the *Global Cache Integration Note* for additional information.

How-to

- 1. In the Configurator, navigate to the **Input/Output** tab.
- 2. Right-click **Communication Device** and select **Add New Communication Device** from the menu. *The Add New Communication Device dialog box is displayed.*
 - a. Name the new Communication Device "GC-100".
 - b. From the Type drop-down list, select Ethernet.
 - c. From the **Communication Type** drop-down list, select **Global Cache GC-100**.
 - d. Click OK.

Add New Communication	Device
Device Name	GC-100
Туре	Ethernet
Device	
Communication Type	GlobalCache GC-100
	Cancel

Quick Reference	e: Add New Communication Device
Device Name	Enter a name for the external device. This can be any name, but should be descriptive so that you can identify this specific device in the Configurator. DO NOT leave this field set to "New Device".
Туре	The type of connection you are using, such as serial port or Ethernet.
Device	This field will populate only if needed, depending on the selected Type.
Communication Type	This is the protocol of the communication. See the <i>Integration Note</i> for the specific device for more information.

3. In the properties window, enter the actual **IP Address** for your Global Cache, and then click **Apply**. If you purchased your Global Cache from ELAN then the static IP address will be listed on a sticker on the device.

Demo Note: If you are running g!Demo, do not enter an IP address and skip to the next step. In an actual install, you will need the correct IP address.

4. Click the **Discover Devices** button at the bottom of the properties window. *After a moment, the IR Senders and Output relays will populate in the Configurator:*



Note: This example shows a Global Cache GC-100-12 or 18.

A GC-100-6 has three IR senders and one COM port.

GC-100-12 and GC-100-18R have six IR senders, two COM ports and three relays.

See the Global Cache Integration Note for additional information.

Exercise 2: Add an IR Device and Learn Codes Using the GC-IRL

Overview The Global Cache IR Learner tool, or GC-IRL, is used to learn IR codes into the g! software directly from an OEM or universal IR remote control. It connects to a serial port, which is typically located on the programmers' PC, but can be on the HomeBrick or the Global Cache itself.

In this exercise, you will add a new IR device for a Satellite Box and use the builtin g! IR learning functionality to assign IR codes for each function.

If you are running g!Demo or if you do not have a GC IRL and a remote, you will not be able to perform all the steps in this exercise. However, it will still be helpful to read through these steps and understand the process. All steps, minus the actual code learning, are possible without this equipment.

How-to Step 1: Add an IR Device.

The IR Device will include all the pertinent details for the device being controlled, including settings such as the emitter port on a Global Cache, repeat counts, toggle bits (if needed), and the IR Codes themselves.

- 1. In the Configurator, go to the Input/Output tab.
- 2. Right-click the **IR Devices** heading in the system tree and select **Add New IR Device...** *The Add New IR Device Window will open.*
 - Select **DirecTV** from the list of **Default Code Sets**. The Default Code Set will pre-populate a list of code blanks to learn the actual IR into.
 - b. Change the Device Name to "Satellite":

Device Name	Sate	llite			
Default Code Set					
< NONE >					
AM/FM Tuner					
Cable					
CD Player					-
CD/DVD Changer				_	
DirecTV				P	
Dish DVD Plaver					-
					~

c. Click OK. A new IR Device named "Satellite" is added.
IR Device : New IR Device				
Name	Satellite			
System #	7207			
Default Sender	< SELECT >			
RC5 Codeset	No			
Decode IR from this device	No			
Tuning Type	Cable (Type 1) 🔽			
Minimum Digits (0 Padding)	0 🔽			
Pre-Tune Command	< NONE >			
Post-Tune Command	< NONE >			
Delay Between Commands	250 msec 🔽			

IR Device Quick Reference:				
Name	Sets the name of the device. The name can be changed to reflect the devices location or for enumeration, for example "Satellite 1" or "Master Bedroom Cable Box"			
System #	Unique, read-only number assigned by the g! software for internal use.			
Default Sender	Drop-down field used to assign the physical IR flasher attached to the device.			
RC5 Codeset	Field used to turn IR Toggle bits on or off. Default value is No .			
Decode IR from this Device	Set this to "Yes" if there is an IR Receiver in a zone and the system should watch for incoming codes from this device for triggering event maps or universal functions. Default is No.			
Tuning Type	For use with TV Channel Favorites. Drop-down field used to differentiate between devices with different channel assignments. Available options are Antenna, Cable (Type 1), Cable (Type 2), Satellite (Type 1) and Satellite (Type 2). Note that these type names are arbitrary assignments, and the names are provided for reference only. A Satellite box will still perform as expected if the Tuning Type is set to Antenna. Default is Cable (Type 1).			
Minimum Digits (0 Padding)	For use with TV Channel Favorites. Drop-down to select the minimum number of digits the device will accept as a channel number. If this is set to "3" and a single digit is entered for the TV Channel Favorite, the system will "Pad" the command by adding two "0" characters at the beginning of the IR stream. Default is "0"			

Pre-Tune Command	For use with TV Channel Favorites. Use this drop-down to select a command to send before Direct Tuning. Default is < NONE >
Post-Tune Command	For use with TV Channel Favorites. Use this drop-down to select a command to send after Direct Tuning. Default is < NONE >
Delay Between Commands	For use with TV Channel Favorites. Set this value to the desired interval between Direct Tuning commands. Default is 250 msec .

- In the properties window of the Satellite IR device, select Sender 4:1 (GC-100) as the Default Sender for this IR Device.
- 4. Click **Apply**. This tells the controller that the emitter for the satellite is connected to Port 1 on the Global Cache device.
- 5. Click the "+" sign to the left of the device to expand the list of IR Commands. *The Placeholders for commands for a typical IR controlled Satellite box are shown:*



Note: In a real installation, this would be a good time to look through the codes listed in the Default Code Set and compare them to the functions on the remote. If you wish to add commands that aren't already populated, it will be easier to add them now and learn them in all at once, rather than learn the additional commands individually later.

For details on adding commands, see Step 3 below.

Step 2: Learn IR Codes.

The next step in creating an IR Device is to learn the actual IR codes into the code blanks using the GC-IRL. If you do not have an IRL and remote, then follow these steps for reference only.

- 1. Attach the GC-IRL to a COM port on your PC. Make sure that the light on the learner is off. If the light is on, the COM port is already in use by another piece of software on your PC, and you will not be able to learn IR Codes.
- 2. Right-click the **Satellite** IR device and select **Learn IR Codes** from the menu. *The IR Learning window is displayed, with the words "Ready, Press Start to Begin" at the top:*

R Codes		Start
		Start
Power On		Stop
Power Off		
Digit 0		
Digit 1		
Digit 2		
Digit 3		
Digit 4		
Digit 5 Divit C		
Digit 6 Digit 7		•
ind Time	100 msec	
.ocal Receiver	NONE	

Note: By default, the **End Time** is set to **100 msec**. This value can be reduced to help capture codes from remotes with shorter pauses between repeated commands.

- 3. From the **Local Receiver** drop-down, select the COM port to which the GC-IRL is connected on your PC.
- 4. Click **Start**. The light on the GC-IRL should turn on, and the window heading will change to reflect the IR code that is being learned.
- 5. Holding the remote 6" from the IRL, point the remote control at the GC-IRL and press and release the button that corresponds to the key referenced at the bottom. *The waveform will flash in the background as the code is learned.*

<u> g</u> lDemo : Configurator		
System	IR Code : Power	On
Interface	Name	Power On
Security	System # Carrier	38000 Hz
Ready, Press Start to Begin	Repeat	4
IR Codes	Universal Function	Power On 💌
Start	CCF Code	
Power On	CCF Code	
Ready, Press Start to Begin KEY Done	Apply	_

 When the code is received, the learning utility will capture and process the code, then automatically advance to the next code in the list. Continue until all codes are learned, then click **Done**.

Note: If you make a mistake and learn a code into the wrong spot, you can go back and re-learn the individual codes one at a time. To do this, first complete learning the remaining codes in the list and click **Done**. Then, right-click the individual code in the system tree and select **Learn this Code**.

Step 3: Add additional IR Codes.

During the process of learning all the codes contained in the Default Code Set for DirecTV, you may notice that some buttons on the remote were never asked for, and aren't included in the Default Code Set. If there are codes you wish to use in the g! software that did not exist in the Default Code Set, you can add these codes manually as follows.

In the following steps, you will add a new IR command and learn the code.

- 1. If the list of commands for the Satellite IR device is not already visible, click the "+" sign next to the IR device to expand it.
- Right-click any existing command in the list and select Add New IR Code... from the pop-up menu. The Add New IR Code dialog box will be displayed:

Add New I	R Code	×
Name	New IR Code	
	Cancel OK	

3. Enter a descriptive name for the new code and click **OK**. The new command is added at the bottom of the list and its properties are displayed on the right.

Quick Reference: IR Code Options			
Name	Sets the name of the IR Code.		
System #	Unique, read-only number assigned by the gl software for internal use.		
Carrier	Read-Only field which displays the frequency of the IR Code		
Repeat	Drop-down selecting the number of times the code is repeated for a single button press. In many cases, this should be changed to 1. All of the Repeat Counts for a device can be changed by right-clicking the IR device and selecting Set Repeat Count for All Codes Default value is 4 .		
Universal Function	Used for mapping the IR code to controls in an interface.		

- 4. Right-click the New IR Code and select Learn this Code...
- 5. From the **Local Receiver** drop-down, select the COM port to which the GC-IRL is connected.
- 6. Click **Start**. The light on the GC-IRL should turn on, and the window heading will change to reflect the IR code that is being learned.
- 7. Point the remote control at the GC-IRL (at a 6-inch distance) and press and release the appropriate button.
- 8. After the code is received, click **Done**.

Exercise 3: Check and Optimize Codes

Overview The following steps explain how to verify all settings and IR codes. These steps also include reference examples for troubleshooting bad IR codes.

How-to

1. IR Testing.

Testing an IR Code can be done directly from the Configurator. It is important to test your codes after learning them to ensure proper operation.

- a. Right-click the code you wish to send, and select **Test Code Now**. *The IR Code will be sent using the Default Sender.*
 - Image: Digit 1

 Image: Digit 2

 Image: Digit 3

 Image: Digit 4

 Image: Digit 5

 Image: Digit 5

 Image: Digit 6

 Image: Digit 7

 Image: Digit 8

 Image: Digit 9
- b. Verify that the device responds to the code properly and does not repeat.

Note: It is good policy to test <u>all</u> IR codes learned into the system. Since g!Demo install is simulating equipment, we cannot know the effectiveness of our command. In a real install, you should check for proper reactions. See the steps below for details on spotting when the code itself is the problem.

2. Spotting and Fixing Bad IR Codes.

The following steps show you how to spot good and bad IR Codes, and how to fix bad codes.

Example 1: Good IR Code

The following image is an example of the waveform view of a good IR code. Note that the time is *less than* 200 msec:



Example 2: Bad IR Code- Code repeated several times

How to spot: The following image is an example of a **bad** IR code. Note that the time is well *over* 200 msec, and the font color of the displayed time has turned yellow. In the image, the code itself is repeated multiple times.



- *Why it happens:* Codes like this can occur due to holding down the button too long when learning, or having the End Time on the Learn IR Codes window set too high.
- *How to fix:* The Configurator provides a built-in tool to fix codes such as this. Right-click the IR Code in the System Tree and select the option to **Remove Repeats**. The Resulting code will look like this:



Example 3: Bad IR Code- Extra vertical lines

How to spot: The following image is another example of a bad IR code. Note that the time is well over 200 msec, and the font color of the displayed time is yellow.

The large block at the beginning of the line is the actual code. The vertical line groupings after the first block are repeated termination strings sent by the remote.



How to fix: To fix a code that looks like this, perform the following steps:

- a. Using your mouse, click on the horizontal center line at the **far right** of the waveform.
- b. Continue to hold down the mouse button, and drag the mouse to the right. *The waveform will begin to highlight green:*



- c. Continue to highlight the waveform, **leaving the last termination string unselected** as in the image above.
- d. Click the **CCF Code** button above the image. *The CCF Code Window will open:*

d	it CCF St	tring										×
	0000	006D	0000	0000	0154	OOAA	0015	003F	0015	0014	0015	<u>^</u>
	0015	0015	0014	0015	0015	0015	003E	0015	003F	0015	0015	
	0015	0014	0015	003F	0015	003E	0015	003E	0015	003F	0015	
	0015	0015	0014	0015	003E	0015	003E	0015	003E	0015	0015	
	0015	003E	0015	003E	0015	0015	0015	003E	0015	003E	0015	
	0015	0015	0014	0015	003F	0015	0014	0015	0015	0015	003E	
	0015	0015	0015	0014	0015	060A	0154	0055	0015	0E3C	0154	
	0054	0015	0E3D	0154	0054	0015	OE3D	0154	0054	0015	0E3C	
	0154	0055	0015	0E3C	0154	0054	0015	OE3D	0154	0054	0015	
	0E3D	0154	0054	0015	0E3C	0154	0054	0015	OF8F			
												-
											Abbī	Y

The highlighted text in the CCF code string corresponds to the highlighted portion of the waveform view.

- e. Press the Delete key on your keyboard, then click Apply.
- f. Close the window and observe that section of the CCF Code was removed and the waveform is changed:



Note: If you cannot get codes to work after editing out suspected bad sections using the steps above, try re-learning the code.

3. Setting Universal Functions.

The g! software uses a concept called **Universal Functions** to assist in mapping interface buttons to their respective commands. In the following steps you will verify that all the Universal Functions are set correctly.

- a. Select the first command in the list. *The properties window for the IR* Code is displayed on the right:
- b. In the IR Code: properties window, select the appropriate from the Universal Function drop-down, then click Apply. If there is not a match for the code you are using you can either set it to <None> or you can assign it to one of the User functions.



c. Confirm that the Universal Function for the other codes are all set correctly to ensure proper mapping. Note that codes added as part of a Default Code Set should all have proper mapping already. Note the drop down list will indicate which functions have already been mapped within the IR Device to help avoid and duplicate functions.

4. Set proper Repeat Counts.

By default, all IR commands have their Repeat Count set to **4**, meaning the IR Code is sent four times every time it is issued. In many cases, this may be desirable to ensure that the IR Command is issued successfully. However, if a repeating code causes undesired behavior when the IR code is sent- for example, sending the Channel Up command results in the channel incrementing by four, you may need to change the Repeat Counts for the code.

- a. Select the code in the Configurator.
- b. In the properties window for the selected code, change the selected number in the **Repeat** drop-down as needed and click **Apply**.







Exercise 4: Export IR File

Overview Now that the IR Device has had all codes tested and optimized, and all proper mapping completed, it is a good idea to export a copy. The exported file can be imported again to this system, if you were controlling multiple identical devices, or imported to another system at a later date if you will reuse this device in a future job. It is recommended that you import your files to an appropriate folder in the **ELAN Common Resources Library** so that they will be easy to find when you need them.

How-to

- 1. In the Configurator, go to the Input/Output tab.
- 2. Right-click the **Satellite** IR device and select **Export to File** from the menu. *The Windows Save As Dialog box opens:*

g! Save As		×
Save jn:	길 DSS	▼ 🗢 🗈 💣 🎞 -
Recent Places	Computer ACER (C:) ProgramData Elan Home Systems CommonResourceLibrary IRLibrary DirecTV Panasonic	▲ ↓ HIR if

 Navigate to the appropriate folder on your PC where you would like to save the file. For this exercise, select the DirecTV folder in the ELAN Common Resources Library as shown above.

Note: The ELAN Common Resources Library installs the data files into a hidden directory. You may need to select "show hidden files and folders" from your explorer folder options dialog box to be able to browse directly to it. Alternatively you can create a shortcut on your desktop to the directory to access the folders.

4. In the File Name field, type "Satellite", then click Save.

Note: Saved file names should be as descriptive as possible and include manufacturer, model number and device type so that they will be easy to find when you have many saved devices.

Exercise 5: Create and Customize an Interface for an IR Source

Overview Now that you have created an IR Device with all proper settings and codes for your source device (Satellite Box), you must create an Interface to control the device using these IR codes. You will create the interface on the Media tab, and add it as a source to a zone controller in a later lesson. This will enable source selection on the zone controller, and display the interface in the Viewer to allow control of the IR source device.

The g! software provides multiple templates to use as starting points for controlling your IR devices. While these templates will cover the most common controls, you may want to customize the interface in order to provide additional functionality. This is accomplished by adding controls to the default interface and then arranging the layout appropriately.

Note: To preview what controls exist on the built-in templates, navigate to Interface Templates on the Media tab in Configurator.

In this exercise, you will add an interface for a Satellite box using a predefined template, and then customize it by adding a new button.

How-to 1. Navigate to the **Media** tab in the Configurator.

- 2. Right-click **Keypads and Interfaces** and select **Add New Interface** from the menu.
 - a. Name the new interface "Satellite Box".
 - b. From the Create From Template drop-down list, select DirecTV Basic Favorites
 - c. In the Connect to Device list select Satellite.
 - d. Click OK.

Add New Interface	×
Interface Name	Satellite
Create From Template	DirecTV Basic Favorites
Connect to Device	Satellite
	Cancel OK

Note: Selecting the Satellite IR device that was created previously will set it as the Default Device for this interface. Any button that is pressed and has a Universal Function associated with it will issue the associated IR code from the Satellite IR device.

 Select the Satellite interface and verify the default device Satellite is selected. The default device drop down list allows selection of any configured IR device, serial device, or built-in driver. The selected device's commands will be mapped to the buttons on the interface via the Universal Function assignments.

Audio Interface :	Satellite Box	
Name	Satellite Box	
System #	4009	
Default Device	Satellite	•

- Expand the entry for your new Satellite Box interface by clicking the "+" sign immediately to its left.
- 5. Click the **800x600 Layout** to select it. *The Interface Layout* for the *Satellite Box displays on the right:*



Note: 800 x 600 is the resolution typically used for a PC viewer. Some "netbooks" will run the Viewer in 800 x 480 mode.

- 6. Add an additional button for the **PIP** command.
 - a. In the Interface Layout, right-click the space between the Prev, Back buttons and select **Add New Control**. *The Add New Control dialog box opens.*
 - b. Select Audio Button from the list of available controls. The Audio Button is a special type of button which allows you add commands to the button directly in the interface. This button is only available on the Media Tab.
 - c. Change the name of the button to "PIP"

d. Click **OK**. A new button labeled "PIP" is added to the Interface Layout.



7. Click the new button in the Interface Layout to select it. *The Audio Button Properties window opens*.

Audio Button	Properties		×	
Name PI	2		leon	ayout : Satellite Box
Text Color		Select Colo	🔽 Default	
Face Color		Select Colo	🔽 Default	
Radius		0	🔽 Default	
Shade In		0	🔽 Default	
Shade Out			🔽 Default	
-		Davidari 🗌		
Style <		border		
Text Size [12		Align Default		
Text Quality	~	Funct. PIP		
Connect To				Guide
🔽 Default Beh	avior			
Irrigation	E Sources	1, 168-401	PIP	select
	🛨 🌗 Zones			
Pool Control	Keypads and Interpreter Line	erfaces		
	Satellite Box		Back	Ent
Input/Output	800 x 600 Lay	yout (Touchscre		

8. In the Audio Button Properties window, select **PIP** from the Funct: dropdown list. Click **Apply**.

Note: Setting the Funct. (short for Universal Function) is an important step, as it will allow this button to automatically map commands to the PIP IR code for the Satellite box.

Alternatively, de-selecting the "Default Behavior" check box in the button properties window will allow you to manually assign button commands to that button.

- 9. Drag the button to place it roughly into position below the **Prev** button in the interface.
- 10. Align and size the button more precisely as follows:
 - a. Click the **PIP** button to highlight it.
 - b. While holding down the Control key on your keyboard (Ctrl), click the **Prev** button. *Each of the buttons will be highlighted in yellow,*

and the group will be highlighted in green.

- c. Right-click either of the buttons and select Make Same Height.
- d. Right-click again and select **Make Same Width**. *Both buttons will now be the same size.*
- e. Right-click one of the selected buttons and select **Align Right Edges**. The right edge of the Menu button will line up with the right side of the Back button.
- f. Click **Apply** to save your changes.

Your interface should now look similar to the one shown below:

Interface Layout : Satellite Box		121
TV Channe		
Prev Quide Ment		
PIP Select	5 6	Channel
	7	Channel
Bax Ext into	- 0 Enter	

Exercise 6: TV Channel Favorites

Overview The g! software provides a pre-made interface for one-touch selection of favorite TV channels. The interface will display icons for favorite channels separated into groups like News or Sports. By clicking the TV icon in the Viewer, the g! software will automatically translate this button press to the correct channel number and send the digits to the cable/satellite box. Multiple "Tuning Types" are supported in order to allow multiple channel numbers to be entered for each channel, in the instance that the install may have more than one type of television source (such as HD and SD, Cable or Satellite service in different rooms).



This exercise details how to add the TV Channel Favorites Control to a source interface, and to configure TV Channel Favorites for proper function.

Before beginning this exercise, be sure you have completed Exercises 2 through 5 in this lesson.

The basic steps of adding TV Channel favorites are:

- 1. Configure the IR Device by selecting the appropriate tuning type, minimum digits, and pre- and post-tune commands as necessary.
- 2. Configure the TV Channel favorites on the Content tab by entering the channel numbers for the appropriate tuning type.
- 3. Add a TV Channel Favorites control to a custom interface and connect it to the appropriate IR Device.

How-to 1. Navigate to the **Input/Output** tab in the Configurator.

2. Select the **Satellite** IR device added in Exercise 2. *The IR Device Properties will be shown on the right:*

IR Device : Satellite	
Name	Satellite
System #	7207
Default Sender	< SELECT >
RC5 Codeset	No
Decode IR from this device	No
Tuning Type	Cable (Type 1) 📃
Minimum Digits (0 Padding)	0
Pre-Tune Command	< NONE >
Post-Tune Command	< NONE >
Delay Between Commands	250 msec 👤

Note: The Tuning Type is used by the TV Channel Favorites control to send the correct channel number to this device. In later steps, you will see the ability to add multiple channel numbers for each TV Channel saved in favorites. There are five Tuning Types available, so that up to five different channel numbers can be selected for each channel. The Tuning Type selected here will control which number is sent when the interface for this device is used.

There are other settings below Tuning Type that affect TV Channel Favorites controls. For this exercise, we will assume the defaults are correct.

Quick Reference:	IR Device Properties
Tuning Type	For use with TV Channel Favorites. Drop-down field used to differentiate between devices with different channel assignments. Available options are Antenna, Cable (Type 1), Cable (Type 2), Satellite (Type 1) and Satellite (Type 2). Note that these type names are arbitrary assignments, and the names are provided for reference only. A Satellite box will still perform as expected if the Tuning Type is set to Antenna. Default is Cable (Type 1) .
Minimum Digits (0 Padding)	For use with TV Channel Favorites. Drop-down to select the minimum number of digits the device will accept as a channel number. If this is set to "3" and a single digit is entered for the TV Channel Favorite, the system will "Pad" the command by adding two "0" characters at the beginning of the IR stream. Default is " 0 "
Pre-Tune Command	For use with TV Channel Favorites. Use this drop-down to select a command to send before Direct Tuning. Default is < NONE >
Post-Tune Command	For use with TV Channel Favorites. Use this drop-down to select a command to send after Direct Tuning. Default is < NONE >
Delay Between Commands	For use with TV Channel Favorites. Set this value to the desired interval between Direct Tuning commands. Default is 250 msec .

- 3. Select **Satellite (Type 1)** from the **Tuning Type** drop-down list and click **Apply**.
- 4. Click on the **Content** tab in the Configurator.
 - a. In the System Tree, navigate to **TV Channels**, and then select the first entry in the list, **A&E**. *The properties for TV Channel: A&E are shown on the right:*



b. In the Satellite Channel (Type 1) field, type the channel number for A&E from the Satellite provider. For this lesson, type in channel number 675, and click Apply.

In a real install, these are the digits that will be sent to the satellite box when A&E is selected from the interface connected to the Satellite Box IR Device, since Satellite (Type 1) is its tuning type.

Note: There are two Cable channel types, two Satellite channel types, and an Antenna channel type, allowing you to use the same TV Favorites interface for five different kinds of devices.

The names are not important as long as the type selected for the IR device matches the channel number typed into the Content tab. Each IR device's Tuning Type field controls which channel number from these settings will be sent when activated from the Interface for that device.

In an actual install, you would now go through and enter the correct channel numbers for each TV Channel Favorite. This is also the time where you would add additional channels, upload new icons from your files or the **ELAN Common Resources Library** and edit/customize the channel groups.

Note: In a real install, ELAN strongly recommends that you create a backup of your settings after fully editing TV Channels and Groups,

This will allow you to import your TV Channels to the Content tab and not spend time entering channel numbers at each job. When you create your master file, it's a good idea to enter channel numbers under different tuning for each type of service you will use, such as DirecTV, Comcast, etc., so that you only ever have to spend time on this file once.

To export/import your files, right-click on either the TV Channels or TV Channel Groups heading and select Export/Import TV Channels and Groups.



Note: You will not be able to see this interface in the Viewer until it is added to a Zone Controller. See the *Distributed AV* and *Home Theater* lessons for details.

The following screen shows how this interface will look in the Viewer.

KIDS LOCAL NEWORK PREMIUM SPORTS MUSIC LEARNING NEWS KIDS LOCAL NETWORK PREMIUM SPORTS MUSIC LEARNING Image: Source	5! g!Demo					
NEWS KIDS LOCAL NEWORK PREMIUM SPORTS MUSIC LEARNING Image: Comparison of the second	g!		Zone 1	<u> </u>	Satellit	e Box
Prev Guide Menu 1 2 3 A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A	NEWS	KIDS LOCAL NETWORK	PREMIUM SPO	rts music	LEARNING	Power
Pask Evit Infa	Prev Menu	Guide Menu Select	1 . 4 . 7 .	2 3 5 6 8 9	Channel Channel	∆ volume ▽

Exercise 7: Add an IR Device and Import an ELAN IRF file from the Common Resource Library

Overview The **ELAN Common Resource Library** includes an IR database that can be imported directly into the g!Software. (ELAN .IRF files saved from other projects may also be imported). Importing files from the **Common Resource Library** is an alternative to learning codes manually.

When using .IRF files, it is important to pay close attention to the Universal Functions in the commands. The g! software will try to chose the Universal Function based on code names.

This exercise also explains how to copy in raw CCF (hex) for IR codes that might be missing from the imported file. Sources for such CCF codes include manufacturer documentation, online resources like remotecentral.com, or third party universal remote programming software (ex. RTI or Phillips Pronto software).

In this exercise, you will create a new IR device for a Video Display, import the codes from an .IRF file, and then check the codes.

How-to

- 1. Navigate to the **Input/Output** tab in the Configurator.
 - 2. Right-click IR Devices in the System Tree and select Add New IR Device.
 - Change the name to IR Display, leave Default Code Set set to < NONE >, and click Apply.

A new IR Device named IR Display will be added to the tree. Since we are importing codes, we do not want any code blanks to populate, as imported IR code files will create their own codes.

Device Name IR Display	
Default Code Set	
< NONE >	
AM/FM Tuner	1.5
Cable/Satellite Box	
CD Player	
DVD Changer	-
DVD Changer/Numeric Keypad	
DVD Player	
HomeLogic Interface Controller HomeLogic Universal Remote	
Cancel	OK

4. Right-click **IR Display** and select **Import From File...** The Windows File Open window opens into the **Common Resource Library** IR Folder.

Look jn	🕻 🍶 Television		-	- 🗈 📸 🖬	
Recent Places Desktop Ben Computer	Name V D Discretes TV R M P2000.in SLV-99.if Video.irf	atem ▼ Туре	V Size V INTW200.if RM-TV305.if TV.if		
	File <u>n</u> ame: Files of type:	Discretes TV.irf		-	<u>O</u> pen Cancel

5. Navigate to Sony\Television\ and select Discretes TV.IRF:

6. Select the file, and then click the **Open** button. *After a moment, the Configurator will refresh, and the imported codes will appear under IR Display:*

🚍 🎟 IR Display	
Power Off	a -
Power On	
Video 1	
Video 2	
🔲 🖬 Video 3	

- On the Input/Output tab in the Configurator, if necessary expand the commands list in the System tree for the IR Device IR Display by clicking on the "+" sign next to the device.
- Notice the list of imported IR Codes does not include any discrete Component Input Commands, only a video input commands. In the following steps you will use CCF data to add in discrete Component 1 & 2 input commands.
 - a. To add a new command, right-click any of the existing commands and select **Add New IR Code...** *The Add New IR Code window opens.*

Add New I	R Code	X
Name	Nevv IR Code	
	Cancel OK	

b. Name the new IR Code "Component 1", and click OK.

- c. Set the Universal Function for the new command to Source Component 1 and click Apply.
- d. Repeat steps **a**, **b** and **c** to add a '**Component 2**' Command.
- e. Using Windows Explorer, navigate to C:\HomeLogic\Training Files and open the **Component 1.txt** file in Notepad.

<u>Eile E</u> o	lit F <u>o</u> rm	at <u>V</u> iew	Help									
0000	006D 0040 0016	0000	0000	0155 0015 0015	00AC 003F 0015	0015	0014 003F	0015	0040 0014 0014	0015	003F 003F 0016	A
0015	003F 0014	0015	0014	0015	003F 0015	0015	0015 003F	0015	0015	0015	0015 003F	
0015	003F	0015	003F	0015	003F	0015	003F	0015	0040	0015	0F9C	
												-

- f. Go to Edit>Select All, All of the text in the document will be highlighted.
- g. Select Edit>Copy to copy the selected text to the Windows Clipboard:

File	Edit	Format	View	Help									
000	U	ndo	Ctrl+Z	20	0155	00AC	0015	0014	0015	0040	0015	003F	4
001	С	ut	Ctrl+X	L6	0015	0015	0015	003F	0015	0014	0015	0016	
001	C	ору	Ctrl+C		0015	003F 0015	0015	0015 003F	0015	0015	0015	0015 003F	
001	P. D	aste elete	Ctrl+V Del	ŝF	0015	003F	0015	003F	0015	0040	0015	0F9C	
	Fi Fi R G	ind ind Next eplace io To	Ctrl+F F3 Ctrl+H Ctrl+G										
	S Ti	elect All ime/Date	Ctrl+A F5										

- h. Close Notepad.
- i. Return to the Configurator and select the **Component 1** command from the **IR Display Device**.
- j. Click the CCF Code button. The Edit CCF String window will open.
- k. Right-click inside the Edit CCF String box and select **Paste**. *The text from the Windows Clipboard will be pasted into the box:*

it CCF St	tring										×
0000 003F 0015 0014 0015 003F 0015	006D 0015 003F 0015 0015 0015 003F	0000 0040 0015 0016 0015 0016 0015	0000 0015 0016 0015 0015 0015 0040	0155 0016 0015 003F 0015 003F 0015	00AC 0015 0015 0015 0014 0015 0F9C	0015 003F 0015 0014 0015 003F	0014 0015 0015 0015 0016 0015	0015 003F 0015 003F 0015 003F	0040 0015 003F 0015 0015 0015	0015 0014 0015 0015 0015 003F	A
										Apply	7

- I. Click **Apply**. The Waveform View will be generated from the CCF Code.
- m. Repeat steps above to copy and paste the CCF for the **Component 2** command.
- Once all the codes have been added, test them using the Test Code Now option. From the Input/Output tab, right-click the code and select Test Code Now.



Note: Since we do not have actual equipment installed for this lesson, we cannot know the effectiveness of our command and will assume it is valid. On a real install, testing codes can be very helpful, and is an important part of the driver creation process.

10. Once you have verified the imported codes work, it is a good idea to prepare them for use in an interface by checking Universal Functions. Since these files were imported from the ELAN database, they do not natively save Universal Function information.

The g! software attempts to match up Universal Functions for you automatically, but if the names of the codes do not match a Universal Function, they will not auto map. It is important therefore to verify all imported codes have Universal Functions set correctly after performing an import from Elan. a. Click on the Video 1 command. Since the g! software's equivalent Universal Function is labeled Source Video 1, this code does not align with any Universal Functions. Set the correct Universal Function now by clicking on the Universal Function drop down, scrolling down and selecting Source Video 1, and click Apply.



- b. Repeat for all the codes selecting the Universal Function as necessary.
- 11. Now that the IR Device has had all codes tested and optimized, and all proper mapping completed, it is a good idea to export a copy. The exported file can be imported again to this system, if you were controlling multiple identical devices, or imported to another system at a later date if you will reuse this device in a future job.
 - a. Right-click the **IR Display** IR device and select **Export to File** from the menu. *The Windows Save As Dialog box opens:*



 Navigate to the appropriate folder on your PC where you would like to save the file. For this exercise, select the Sony\Television folder in the ELAN Common Resources Library as shown above.

Note: The **ELAN Common Resources Library** installs the data files into a hidden directory. You may need to select "show hidden files and folders" from your explorer folder options dialog box to be able to browse directly to it. Alternatively you can create a shortcut on your desktop to the directory to access the folders.

b. In the **File Name** field, type "**IR Display**", then click **Save**.

Note: Saved file names should be as descriptive as possible and include manufacturer, model number and device type so that they will be easy to find the next time you need them.

Exercise 8: Add an IR Controlled Display

Overview Now that you have added in the IR Codes for an IR Controlled Display, you will add in the Display itself on the Media tab.

In this exercise, you will add an IR Controlled Display and assign IR commands to the various functions.

How-to
 1. Navigate to the Media tab in the Configurator, right-click Video Displays and select Add New Video Display.... The Add New Video Display Dialog box is shown:

Device Type	
Fujitsu P_XTA51US Series	
Generic Video Display	
InFocus 7210	
JVC DLA-RS1	
LG Plasma/LCD Series	
Maxx1400-LCOS	
NEC GT-6000	
Olevia Series-3	
Panasonic PT-AE1000U	
Panasonic TH Series	
Pioneer CMX Series	
Pioneer PDP Series	
Pioneer Pro Series	
Comeuna III Corice	

2. Select **Generic Video Display** from the list, name the device "**IR Display**", and click **OK**. *A New Video Display will be added:*



- 3. Check the **Settings** on the Display.
 - a. Set **On Off Control Type** to **Discrete Verify (Always Send)**. The Power Command in the Controller Commands Window will change from Power Cycle to separate commands for Power On and Power Off:

🥰 g!Demo∶Con	figurator			
System	Media System	Video Display : IR	Display	
Interface	Source Preview Options	Name System #	IR Display 4546	
Security		Device Type	Generic Video Display	
Climate.	🗌 🔗 DVD Players	On Off Control Type	Discrete Verify (Always Send)	•
Climate	UR Displays	Source Control Type	Discrete Verify (Always Send)	•
Lighting	Keypad Controllers	Delay After On/Off	100 msec	_
	Audio Zone Controllers	Delay After Source	100 msec	_
Media	Keypads and Interfaces Satellite Box	Controller Commands		
Messaging	Interface Templates Interface Groups	Up Power On Power Off		
Video				
Irrigation		Down		
Pool Control				
		Add Input	Delete Input	
Input/Output				
UPS				
Event Mapper				
Content		Apply		
)

Quick Reference:	Video Display
Name	Name of Generic Display
On Off Control	Select Cycling for units with a power toggle.
Туре	Select Discrete for units with discrete on/off commands.
	Select Discrete Verify to enable resend of discrete commands even when in a perceived correct state.
Source Control Type	Select Cycling, Discrete, or Discrete Verify control types for source/input selection.
Delay After On/Off	Use to set a delay before next command on units that have a warm-up time during which they will not accept commands.
Delay After Source	Use to set a delay before next command on units that have a period after source change where they will not accept commands.

- b. Set **Source Control Type** to **Discrete Verify (Always Send)** then click Apply.
- c. Click the **Add Input** button below the Controller Commands Window. *The Add New Display Input window opens.*

Add New Di	isplay Input	×
Name	New Input	
	Cancel OK	

- d. **Name** the New Input "**Video Input 1**". *Video Input 1 is added to the Controller Commands Box.*
- e. Repeat steps above to add Video Input 2 and Video Input 3.
- f. Click the **Power On** controller Command. *The Commands Window is displayed.* Note that there is no command present for Power On.

g!Demo : Con	figurator			_ 🗆 ×
System	Media System Audio Library Options	Video Display : IR	Display	
Interface	Source Preview Options	Name	IR Display	
	MP3 Players	System #	4546	
Security	Tuners	Device Type	Generic Video Display	
	🗌 🧭 DVD Players	On Off Control Type	Discrete Verify (Always Send)	-
Climate	🖃 🗖 Video Displays	Source Control Type	Discrete Verify (Always Send)	-
Lighting	Keynad Controllers	Delay After On/Off	100 msec	•
Commands	× Keypad controllers	Delay After Source	100 msec	•
Add Comm Irrigation	nand Defeto Commend Test	Up Down Down Controller Controller Power Off Video 1 Video 2 Video 3		
		Add Input	Delete Input	
Input/Output				
UPS				
Event Mapper				
Content		Apply		

- 4. Map the **Controller Commands** to the IR Commands.
 - a. Right-click the IR Display and select **Map/Remap Display to Device...** An HLCONFIG Warning box will be displayed, click "Yes" to continue, the Map/Remap Interface to Device window will be open:

Map / Remap Interface to	Device 🗙
Select Device:	
< ACTIVE ZONE HANDLER >	
Satellite	
Car	ncel OK

b. Select IR Display from the list of devices and click OK.

c. Click the **Power On** Controller Command. *The Commands Window is displayed.* Note that now the Window is populated with the IR Command that matches the Power On Universal Function:

Commands		×
IR Display: Power On : Send IR vi	a Default Device	Move Up
		Move Down
Add Command	Delete Command	Test

Note: If the commands window does not have a command populated, it is most likely due to the command name not matching the Universal Function of the command. Commands can be added manually by clicking the **Add Command** button.

Exercise 9: Add an IR Device and Import Codes from a g! HIR file

Overview In this exercise you will add an IR controlled Cable TV box by importing a g! HIR file. An HIR file is created when a complete IR Device is exported from the Configurator. You will use one of the templates that are included in the Configurator to control the cable box.

How-to

- 1. Add the IR Device.
 - a. On the Configurator **Input/Output** tab, right-click **IR Devices** in the System Tree and select **Add New IR Device**. *The IR Device window opens.*
 - b. Change the **Name** to Cable TV and leave the **Default Code Set** as **<NONE>**.

ialog			×
Device Name	Cable TV		
Default Code Se	et		
< NONE >			
AM/FM Tuner			
Cable/Satellite E	Эох		
CD Player			
DVD Changer			
DVD Changer/N	lumeric Keypad		
DVD Player			
HomeLogic Inte	rface Controller		
HomeLogic Univ	/ersal Remote		_
			_
	Cancel	ок	

- c. Click **OK** to add the IR Device. Cable TV is added to the System Tree, and the IR Device properties display to the right.
- 2. Import the IR code data set saved from another system.
 - a. Right-click the **Cable TV** IR Device in the System Tree and select **Import From File**.
 - b. Browse to C:\HomeLogic\Training Files and select the **CableTV.HIR** file and click **Open**.

 Check the IR Device. If necessary click the plus sign "+" next to Cable TV to expand the IR Device. The code set should look like the screen shown below.



- 4. Check one of the IR Codes.
 - a. Click on the first code in the list. Verify the IR wave form appears as shown below.



- b. Verify that the Universal Function selected is appropriate for the code. *This is the pointer to auto-associate this code to the proper button on the interface.*
- c. Check the repeat count for the IR codes as necessary.

- 5. Add the interface.
 - a. On the Configurator **Media** tab, right-click **Keypads and Interfaces** in the System Tree, then select **Add New Interface**. *The Add New Interface window opens.*
 - b. Type Cable TV in the Interface Name field.
 - c. Select **Cable Advanced** from the **Create From Template** drop-down menu.
 - d. Select Cable TV from the Connect To Device drop-down list.

Interface Name	Cable TV	
Create From Template	Cable Advanced	•
Connect to Device	Cable TV	-

- e. Click **OK** to add the new interface.
- 6. Check the interface.
 - a. Click the plus sign (+) next to the **Cable TV** interface in the System Tree to expand it and show the available resolutions.
 - b. Select the 800 x 600 resolution main page to view its button layout.
 - c. Click the **Guide** button to display the Audio Button Properties and Button Commands windows for this button.

Audio Butto	on Propertie	S			×
Name	Guide				loon
Text Color				Select Color	🛛 🔽 Default
Face Color				Select Color	🛛 🔽 Default
Radius				• 0	🔽 Default
Shade In	Ī			. 0	🔽 Default
Shade Out	Ī			0	🔽 Default
Style	< TEXT >	•	Border		Ţ
Text Size	12 pt	🖂 🔽 Default	Align	Default	-
Text Quality		Ψ.	Funct.	Guide	*
Connect To		T			~
🔽 Default B	lehavior				64

d. Verify that the button Universal Functions are mapped properly. *The Funct. drop-down refers to the Universal Function that is assigned to the button.*

At this point sources have been configured but cannot be viewed in the Viewer. In the Home Theater and Distributed AV lessons, you will add them to an Audio Zone Controller and then be able to select and view them from the Viewer.

Notes:

Notes:

Lesson 7 One-way RS-232 Control



Overview

This lesson shows you how to use the Generic Serial Device driver to add support for any RS-232 device that you can control with basic RS-232 commands.

You will:

- Learn how to add serial commands for oneway control of serial devices.
- Understand Universal Functions and how they apply to Generic Serial Devices and Interfaces.
- Learn how to use Generic Serial Device commands to control devices from the g! software.
- Learn how to export and import Generic Serial Devices.

Requirements

- A PC running g!Demo and g!Connect Pro.
- -or-
- ELAN Controller and g!Connect Pro.

Overview

Overview The Generic Serial Device driver is used for sending one-way commands to a serial controllable device that either does not benefit from a full 2-way driver in the g! software, or for which a 2-way driver is not available. The Generic Serial Device driver is not intended to support full two-way communication, and is primarily used for devices that do not provide feedback.

Examples of devices that are well suited as Generic Serial Devices are audio and video sources (such as DVD players) and video displays (televisions or projectors). The Generic Serial Device driver is not intended for devices like tuners and receivers, where the two-way feedback (the current station on a tuner or the active source on the receiver) is important.

The following diagram shows the basic equipment in a system schematically. The diagram includes the components that are important to the ELAN controller.



Terms

The following terms are used in the Configurator:

- **Communication Device:** The serial port or other communication method used to communicate with the device.
- **Generic Serial Device**: The device group containing serial commands and other information related to the device on the Input/Output Tab.
- Universal Function: A tool used to map controls in the interface to their associated commands in the Generic Serial Device.
- Hex or Hexadecimal: Code language commonly used in serial commands. Hex code strings use numbers and certain letters to represent the numbers 0-15. 0-9 equates 0-9, with A-F equating 10-15. Hex codes are often denoted by the presence of a small "h" at the end of a letter sequence. Sample: 02h
- **ASCII**: Code language commonly used in serial commands. ASCII strings are typically human readable text, such as ABCDEFG0123 etc.
- **Binary**: Code type consisting of 1's and 0's, representing ON and OFF respectively. Binary concepts are used frequently in serial codes, with the same command with a 1 or 0 on the end indicating whether to activate or deactivate that function.
- **Generic Display**: A Generic display driver that allows custom mapping of commands such as source and power. This display may be connected to a zone in zone settings for automatic switching based on source selection.
- **Interface:** The customizable button layout that makes up the user interface in the Viewer.
How-to To integrate a generic serial controlled device:

- Add the Communication Device.
- Add the Generic Serial Device, including adding commands.
- For displays: add a Generic Video Display, map the commands appropriately and configure this display in a zone.
- For sources: add the Interface, map commands and configure the Zone Controller for the source interface.
- For other items: Configure appropriate Event Mapping.

Exercise 1: Add Generic Serial Devices from a Protocol Document

- *Overview* In this exercise, you will add a Generic Serial Driver for a projector. A projector is a good candidate for one-way serial control as they typically do not provide much feedback, and there are a limited number of commands required to program.
- How-to
 1. In the Configurator, click on the Input/Output tab. Right-click
 Communication Devices and click Add New Communication Device.
 The Add New Communication Device window opens.
 - a. Enter "Projector" as the Device Name.
 - b. Leave the Type set to Serial Port.
 - c. Set Communication Type to Generic Serial.
 - d. Click OK.

Add New Communication	Device X
Device Name	Projector
Туре	Serial Port
Device	
Communication Type	Generic Serial
	Cancel OK

Note: The communication type will appear as Standard Connection when added, but will automatically change to Generic Serial and allow editing when linked to a Generic Serial device.

2. Right-click on Generic Serial Devices and Add New Generic Serial Device. The Add New Generic Serial Device window opens.

3. Select Generic Serial Device, type "**Projector**" in the **Name** field, and then click **OK**.

Add New (Generic Serial De	evice		×
Name	Projector			
Device T	уре			
Generio	: Serial Device			
Search	For Devices	Cancel	(ОК

Notice the Generic Serial Device has auto-linked to the Communication Device added in Step 1.

Input/Output Input/Output Input/Output Input/Output	Generic Serial Device : Projector	
□ 10 g GC-10	Name	Projector
Projector	Svstem #	7352
	Device Type	Generic Serial Device
	Location	< SELECT >
🛨 📟 Projector	Communication Device	Projector 🔹

4. Click **Projector** under **Communication Devices** in the System Tree to verify the baud rate and other serial settings are configured correctly for this device.

Communication Device	e: Projector	
Name	Projector	
System #	5651	
Device Type Serial Port / Generic Serial		
Location	< SELECT >	Ŧ
Enable Sharing	No	•
Sharing Port	0	
COM Port	NONE	•
Protocol	RS232	•
Baud Rate	9600	٠
Flow Control	None	•
Parity	None	٠
Data Bits	8	٠
Stop Bits	1	•

Note: For this exercise we will assume the default settings are correct, but in a real install all the serial settings must **exactly** match those indicated in the serial protocol for the device for communication to be effective.

- Navigate to the Generic Serial Devices Projector in the System Tree, and right-click on No Serial Codes. Select Add New Serial Code. The Add New Serial Code window opens.
- 6. Name the code **Power On** and click **OK**. The code is added below the Generic Serial Device named Projector and should be automatically highlighted, and the properties display on the right.

Add New 9	ierial Code	×
Name	Power On	
	Cancel OK	

7. In the Power On properties, select **Power On** from the **Universal Function** drop-down list. Before entering the code, it is important to select the Universal Function so that the g! software can properly associate the command with the control.

Serial Code : Power On		
Name	Power On	
System #	7353	
Universal Function	< SELECT >	•
ASCII	Now Playing On Demand Open/Close Options Page Down Page Un	^
HEX	Pause Play Power Cycle	
Terminator	Power Off Power On Prev Source Prev Track Progressive Random Record Red Repeat	

 Now that the Universal Function is entered, enter the serial code for the projector. For this exercise, assume the power command is the ASCII string "Power1<cr>".

Note: Codes like <cr> are common in serial commands, and refer to "carriage return" or "enter".

- 9. You will add the code in two steps:
 - a. Enter the ASCII string the box labeled ASCII. The ASCII string is the text portion of the code prior to <cr>; "Power1". Notice that as you do so the hex-equivalent of your ASCII string is displayed in the HEX box.

Note: Some serial commands are case sensitive. Refer to the protocol document for details.

Serial Code : Power On		
Name	Power On	
System #	7353	
Universal Function	Power On	•
	Power1	^
ASCII		
		\sim
	50 6F 77 65 72 31	<u>~</u>
HEX		
		\sim
Terminator	None	-

- Enter the carriage return, which terminates the command and lets the projector know that this is the end of the command sequence. Since "carriage return" is not a character that can be displayed in ASCII, you will not enter anything into the ASCII field (pressing enter at the end of Power1 will not add the carriage return for you). Instead, select Carriage Return from the Terminator drop-down list.
- c. Click Apply to save.

lame	Power On	
System #	7353	
Universal Function	Power On	•
	Power1	<u>^</u>
ASCII		
		~
	50 6F 77 65 72 31	~
HEX		
		~
Terminator	Carriage Return	-

Note: The g! software allows you to automatically append common terminators like carriage return and linefeed to the end of serial commands through the drop-down. If your particular serial protocol requires a different terminator, you can enter the terminator's hex code into the hex field.

Typically, a small box will appear at the end of the ASCII string to indicate the presence of a non-display character (Vista users may not see this box). For example, a carriage return's ASCII code is 13. Since entering 13 into the ASCII string will send 1...3, you enter 0D into the hex field to append the correct data.

- 10. Add the rest of the codes. In total, you will add 3 more codes to this generic serial driver: **Power Off, Component Input**, and **HDMI Input**.
 - a. To add the **Power Off** command, right-click on the Power On code and select **Add New Serial Code**. *The Add New Serial Code window opens.*
 - b. Name the code "Power Off", and click **OK**.

Add New S	erial Code	X
Name	Power Off	
	Cancel OK	

c. Select the Universal Function pointer for Power Off from the Universal Function drop-down list.

Serial Code : Power Off		
Name	Power Off	
System #	7358	
Universal Function	Power Off	•
	Power Off	^
100	Power On	
ASCII	Prev Source	
	Prev Track	
	Progressive	
	Random	
HEX	Record	
	Red	
	Repeat	
Terminator	Powind	
	Right	
	Save	
	Search	
	Seek Down	
	SeekUp	
	Select	
	Setup	~

- d. The code string to turn the projector off is Power0<cr>
 Refer to steps 10a and 10b to enter the command:
 - i. Enter Power0 in the ASCII box
 - ii. Select the **Carriage Return** separately from the **Terminator** drop-down.
 - iii. Click Apply when finished.

Serial Code : Power Off		
Name	Power Off	
System #	7358	
Universal Function	Power Off	•
	Power0	^
ASCII		
		\sim
	50 6F 77 65 72 30	<u> </u>
HEX		
		\sim
Terminator	Carriage Return	•

11. Refer to steps 10a and 10b to add the two input commands, being sure to set the Universal Function (inputs are listed as Source Video # etc.) as you go.

The commands for the remaining inputs are:

Input1<cr> for the **Component** input.

Input2<cr> for the HDMI input.

12. The completed commands should look like the following:

Component

Serial Code : Component		
Name	Component	
System #	5660	
Universal Function	Source Video 1	•
	Input1	4
ASCII		
	1	7
	49 6E 70 75 74 31	<u>e</u>
HEX		
		v
Terminator	Carriage Return	*

HDMI

Serial Code : H	IMC	
Name	HDMI	2
System #	5664	
Universal Function	Source Video 2	-
	Input2	A
ASCII		
	3	V
	49 6E 70 75 74 32	<u>e</u>
HEX		
		~
Terminator	Carriage Return	•

 Once all the codes are added, it is a good idea to test them. To test codes at any time, navigate to the Input/Output tab, right-click on the code and select Test Code Now.



Note: Since actual equipment is not installed for this lesson, we cannot know the effectiveness of the command and will assume it is valid. On a real installation, testing codes can be very helpful when developing Generic Serial Drivers, and is an important part of the driver creation process.

- 14. Once you have fully tested the serial driver, cleaned up any codes, and added all Universal Functions, it is a good idea to **Export** the verified driver. This allows you to start to build a database of drivers you can control regularly.
 - a. To export files, right-click on the name of the Generic Serial Driver and select **Export to File**.



- b. A Windows file dialog box opens:
 - i. Enter a descriptive name that includes the type and model of the device,
 - ii. Navigate to an appropriate location in the Common Resource Library,
 - iii. Click Save to save your file.

Save As					? ×
Save in:	Backups		•	(† 🖻 🔿	•
My Recent Documents Desktop					
My Documents					
My Computer					
- S	File <u>n</u> ame:	SerialProjectorModel			<u>S</u> ave
My Network Places	Save as <u>t</u> ype:	HomeLogic Generic Serial	Device F	iles (*.HSR) 💌	Cancel

Note: This file can be imported to any g! system running the same or newer software version. This is useful if you have multiple units of the same type on one job, or will use this device again on another job. Even if you don't think you will use the device again, it is always a good idea to make a backup file.

Exercise 2: Create a Generic Display

- *Overview* Once you have created a Generic Serial Device, you now have a database of codes you can use in the system. For a projector or other video display, the best way to use this database is to attach the codes to a Generic Video Display. Then you can assign that display to an A/V zone for automatic power and input switching based on source selection. (See the following lessons on *Configuring Distributed A/V* or *Configuring Home Theater Systems* for more information.)
 - In Configurator, navigate to the Media tab, right-click on Video Displays in the System Tree and then select Add New Video Display. The Add New Video Display window opens.
 - Select Generic Video Display from the list. Name the display "Projector" and click OK.

Add New Video Display	×
Name Projector	
Device Type	
Fujitsu P_XTA51US Series	
Generic Video Display	
InFocus 7210	
JVC DLA-RS1	
LG Plasma/LCD Series	
NEC GT-6000	
Olevia Series-3	
Panasonic PT-AE1000U	
Panasonic TH Series	
Pioneer CMX Series	
Pioneer PDP Series	
Pioneer Pro Series	
Let in the series	•
Search For Devices Cancel OK	

How-to

3. The Generic Video Display for Projector is added to the System Tree, and the configuration options appear in the properties window to the right.

Video Display : Projector		
Name	Projector	
System #	7371	
Device Type	Generic Video Display	
Location	< SELECT >	
On Off Control Type	Cycling 🗸	
Source Control Type	Cycling 🗾	
Delay After On/Off	100 msec 🗾 💌	
Delay After Source	100 msec 🗾 💌	
Controller Commands		
Up Power On/Off Down		
Add Input	Delete input	

Quick Reference: Video Display		
Name	Name of Generic Display	
On Off Control	Select Cycling for units with a power toggle.	
Гуре	Select Discrete for units with discrete on/off commands.	
	Select Discrete Verify to enable resend of discrete	
	commands even when in a perceived correct state.	
Source Control	Select Cycling, Discrete, or Discrete Verify control types	
Туре	for source/input selection.	
Delay After	Use to set a delay before next command on units that	
On/Off	have a warm-up time during which they will not accept	
	commands.	
Delay After	Use to set a delay before next command on units that	
Source	have a period after source change where they will not	
	accept commands.	

4. Below the drop-down fields, there is a shaded area which contains Controller Commands. This is where you will map the appropriate commands to various projector functions. Change the drop-downs to the following settings, and as you do so, notice that the controller commands box is affected by your selections:

Property	Setting
On Off Control Type	Discrete (because we have unique On and Off commands.)
Source Control Type	Discrete (because we have unique commands for each input)
Delay After On/Off	For this exercise, leave these set to defaults. In an
Delay After Source	 actual install, setting these fields typically requires a trial and error testing.

Video Display : Projector		
Name	Projector	
System #	7371	
Device Type	Generic Video Display	
Location	< SELECT >	
On Off Control Type	Discrete 🔽	
Source Control Type	Discrete 🔽	
Delay After On/Off	100 msec 🔽	
Delay After Source	100 msec 🔽	
Controller Commands		
Power On Power Off		
Add Input	Delete Input	

5. Before you add commands, you must manually add commands for inputs. To add an Input Command, click **Add Input** at the bottom of the Controller Commands list. *The Add New Display Input window opens.* 6. Name the input "Component" and click OK.

Add New I)isplay Input	×
Name	Component	
	Cancel OK	

7. Repeat these steps and add a second input and name it HDMI.

Add New D)isplay Input	×
Name	HDM	
	Cancel OK	

The next step is to tell the g! software what code to send when each command is issued. To add codes to the Controller Command for Power On, click on the name Power On in the Controller Commands box. *The Commands window opens.*

Commands		×
		Move Up
		Move Down
Add Command	Delete Command	Test

9. Click the **Add Command button...** *The Add Commands window opens.* Generic Serial Commands occupy their own System Family in the list, and each code is listed by the name of the Generic Serial Device followed by a colon (:) and the name of the code. 10. Select the code for **Power On** to send via **Default Device** (the *Default Device* is the Communication Device we created and associated with the Generic Serial Device on the Input/Output tab) and click **OK**. *The command is added to the Commands window.*

System Family Command Groups Audio Zone Controller Climate System Display Projector Projector: Component Projector: HDMI DVD Player DVR General System Projector: Power Off Generic Serial Device Input/Output Inputs Projector: Power On IR Sender Irrigation System Media System Media System Messaging Outputs Available Commands	
Audio Zone Controller Climate System Display Projector Dive Display Projector: Component DVD Player Projector: HDMI DVR Projector: Power Off General System Projector: Power On Generic Serial Device Input/Output Input/Output Available Commands Keypad Controller Send via Default Device Lighting System Send via Device Media System Send via Device Messaging Outputs	
Pool Control Power Supply Security System Tuner Video Controller Video System	
Cancel OK	
	_
Projector: Power On : Send via Default Device Move Up Move Down Move Down	
Add Command Delete Command Test	

Note: All commands in the Command window will automatically be sent in sequence when this command function is called.

- 11. Close the Commands window since we do not need to add any further commands to power on the projector in this exercise.
- 12. Repeat steps 8-11 to add commands to **Power Off**, **Component**, and **HDMI**.

Once all commands are added, you are ready to configure the Generic Display as the display on an AV Zone just like you would with a display with built-in driver. See following lessons, *Configuring Distributed A/V* or *Configuring Home Theater Systems* for details.

Exercise 3: Import a Serial File from the Common Resource Library for a Generic Serial Source

Overview In this exercise, you will import a serial code file from the ELAN Common Resource Library to provide one-way serial control from the g! software. The steps outlined here will work much the same for importing Generic Serial Drivers created and exported from the g! software, except that g! files will include full Universal Function data.

In the following steps, you will add a Generic Serial Driver for a DVD Player. A DVD Player is a good candidate for one-way serial control as there is typically no feedback required.

How-to

- 1. In Configurator, navigate to the Input/Output tab.
- 2. Right click **Communication Devices** and click **Add New Communication Device.** *The Add New Communication Device window opens.*
- 3. Name the device **Generic DVD** or similar, leave the **Type** set to **Serial Port**, and set the **Communication Type** to **Generic Serial** and click **OK**.

Add New Communication	Device X
Device Name	Generic DVD
Туре	Serial Port
Device	
Communication Type	Generic Serial
	Cancel OK

Note: The communication type will appear as Standard Connection when added but will change to Generic Serial and allow editing when linked to a Generic Serial driver.

- 4. Right-click **Generic Serial Devices** and select **Add New Generic Serial Device.** *The Add New Generic Serial Device window opens.*
- 5. Select Generic Serial Device as the Device Type, enter "DVD Player" as the Name, and click OK.

Add New	Generic Serial De	vice		×
Name	DVD Player			
Device 1	Гуре			
Generi	c Serial Device			
Search) For Devices	Cancel	ок	

6. Notice the Generic Serial Device has auto-linked to the Communication Device added in Step 1.

Communication Devices	Generic Senai Device	e . DVD Playei	
GC-100	Name	DVD Player	
Projector	System #	5774	
Input Controllers	Device Type	Generic Serial Device	
Output Controllers	Communication Device	Generic DVD	-
Relay Block 3 (GC-100)			
—	Tuning Type	Cable (Type 1)	•
🕀 🚥 DVD Player	Minimum Digits (0 Padding	0	-

7. Click the **Generic DVD** under **Communication Devices** to verify the baud rate and other serial settings are configured correctly.

Name	Generic DVD	
System #	5776	
Device Type	Serial Port / Generic Serial	
Location	< SELECT >	-
Enable Sharing	No	-
Sharing Port	0	
COM Port	NONE	•
Protocol	RS232	•
Baud Rate	9600	•
Flow Control	None	•
Parity	None	•
Data Bits	8	-
Stop Bits	1	-

For this exercise we will assume the default settings are correct, but in a real install all the serial settings must **exactly** match those indicated in the serial protocol for the device for communication to be effective.

- 8. Next, you will import the serial codes. Note: The serial codes must be in **Elan SC4_SER** or **HomeLogic HSR** file format.
 - a. To import a file, right-click on **DVD Player** under **Generic Serial Devices** in the System Tree and select **Import From File...**. The Windows File Open dialog box will open up to the **ELAN Common Resource Library** Serial Library Folder.



b. Browse to the Toshiba folder and select the HD-XA1 file as shown below to import the Toshiba DVD Player file.



 c. For a few moments the g! software will read and interpret the settings saved in the file. Once finished, click the + symbol and you will see a list of codes displayed inside your Generic Serial Device: DVD Player in the System Tree.

System	Generic Serial Devices Projector	\bigcap
Interface	□ ^œ Power On □ ^œ Power Off	\frown
Security	☐ See Component See HDMI	
Climate	└── ^{œe} DVD Player └── ^{œe} Pause_Step	
Lighting		
Media	•== 4 •== 5	
Messaging	∞ 6 ∞ 7	
Video		\cup
Irrigation	eee 0 ≅ Slow	
Pool Control	er Power Loggle	
Input/Output	en Stop	

 Once all the codes have been added, test them using the Test Code Now option. Right-click the code on the Input/Output tab, and select Test Code Now.



Note: Since actual equipment Is not installed for this lesson, we cannot verify that the command is effective but will assume it is valid. On a real install, testing codes can be very helpful when developing Generic Serial Drivers, and is an important part of the driver creation process.

10. Once you have verified that the imported codes work, it is a good idea to prepare them for use in an interface by checking Universal Functions.

Since these files were imported from the ELAN database, they do not natively save Universal Function information. The g! software attempts to match up Universal Functions for you automatically, but if the names of the codes in the imported serial files do not match a Universal Function, they will not auto-map.

Therefore, it is important to verify that all imported codes have Universal Functions set correctly after performing an import from Elan.

- a. Click on the first code in the list, Pause_step. Since the g! software's Universal Function is labeled Pause, this code does not align with any Universal Functions.
- b. Set the correct Universal Function now by clicking on the **Universal Function** drop down, scrolling down and selecting **Pause**.

Serial Code : Pa	use_Step	
Name	Pause_Step	
System #	7397	
Universal Function	Page Down	•
ASCII	Live TV Menu My Music My Pictures My TV	~
HEX	My Videos Next Source Next Track Now Playing	
Terminator	On Demand Open/Close Options Page Down Page Up	
	Pause Play Power Cycle Power Off	~

c. Go through all the codes repeating steps a and b as necessary.

Notes about codes that do not match a Universal Function:

-Some codes, like **I_P Selector**, will not have a Universal Function in the g! software. You may leave these unmapped.

-Any commands you do not map Universal Functions to will **not** auto-map to an Interface.

-There are 20 "User" Universal Functions available for you to map any functions you wish to auto-map that are not in the g! software's default listing.

- 11. Now that the Serial Device has had all codes tested and optimized, and all proper mapping completed, it is a good idea to export a copy. The exported file can be imported again to this system, if you were controlling multiple identical devices, or imported to another system at a later date if you will reuse this device in a future job.
 - a. Right-click the **DVD Player** and select **Export to File** from the menu. *The Windows Save As Dialog box opens:*



 Navigate to the appropriate folder on your PC where you would like to save the file. For this exercise, select the Toshiba folder in the ELAN Common Resources Library as shown above.

Note: The **ELAN Common Resources Library** installs the data files into a hidden directory. You may need to select "show hidden files and folders" from your explorer folder options dialog box to be able to browse directly to it. Alternatively you can create a shortcut on your desktop to the directory to access the folders.

c. In the File Name field, type "DVD Player", then click Save.

Note: Saved file names should be as descriptive as possible and include manufacturer, model number and device type so that they will be easy to find the next time you need them.

Exercise 4: Add an Interface for Generic Serial-controlled Source

- Overview Once you have added a Generic Serial Device on the Input/Output tab for an AV source, you must add an interface that will contain the graphical layout of buttons and other elements to control the device from a touch screen. Creating these Interfaces is much like those created for IR sources, and is done on the Media tab. Templates are available for common devices as a starting point, and may be customized based on your needs.
- How-to
- 1. In Configurator, navigate to the **Media tab**, right-click on **Keypads and Interfaces** and select **Add New Interface**. *The Add New Interface window opens.*



- Name the interface "DVD Player" and select DVD Single Disc as the Create From Template. Finally, Connect to Device must be set to DVD Player—this will set the DVD Player as the default device for this interface and in turn use the Universal Functions to automatically map commands to the buttons and controls.
- 3. Click **OK** to add the new interface.

Add New Interface	×
Interface Name	DVD Player
Create From Template	DVD Single Disc
Connect to Device	DVD Player
	Cancel OK

 Verify that mapping was effective for the default device. Click on the DVD Player in the Interface list and verify the default device is set to DVD Player

Audio Interface :	DVD Player	
Name	DVD Player	
System #	5997	
Default Device	DVD Player	•

5. Click the + next to **DVD Player** and select the **800x600** layout to preview the DVD Player interface.

g!Demo : Con	ligurator	
System	Media System Audio Library Options	Interface Layout : DVD Player
Interface	Source Preview Options	
Security	Tuners OVD Discuss	
Climate	Video Displays	
Lighting	Projector	
Media	Keypad Controllers Main Audio Zone Controllers Keypads and Interfaces	
Messaging		
Video	DVD Player	
Irrigation	 ■ 800 x 480 Layout (Touchscreen) ■ 240 x 320 Layout (iPhone/iPod Touch 	
Pool Control	MENU	
Input/Output	EKEYPAD	
UPS		
Event Mapper		
Content		Apply

6. Click on the **Menu** button in the interface to display the buttons properties. Verify the **Funct** (Universal Function) selection is set to **Menu**. *This means that when this button is pressed in the Viewer the Menu command for this interfaces default device will be issued.*

🛃 g!Demo : Configurator	
Sy Audio Button Properties	x yout : DVD Player
Inter Text Color	Select.Golor 🔽 Default
Se Face Color	Select Color, C Default
Cli Radius Shade In	0 V Default
Lic Shade Out	0 V Default
Me Style < TEXT >	Border
Me Text Quality	Agn Default Funct. Menu Select 7 3 3
Vic Connect To	
Irrig	(iPhone/iPod Touc
Pool Control	
Input/Output	
UPS	
Event Mapper	Abbly
Content	

The generic serial DVD player and interface is now complete. In the following lessons you will configure this device in a zone controller and be able to see it in the Viewer.

The interface for the DVD Player is customizable, you can add, move, resize, rename, or remove any controls.

Clicking on any button in the interface will show its properties dialog box. Clearing the **Default Behavior** check box uncouples the automatic Universal Function control and allows manual command selection via the **Button Command** dialog box.

Sy Audio Button Properties Name Menu	×i yout : DVD Player
International In	
Face Color	Select Color.
Se	
Cli Radius	0 IV Default
Shade In	0 V Default
LIS Shade Out	0 V Default
Me Style TEXT >	Border 1 2
Text Size 12 pt V Defe	ault Align Default
Text Quality	Funct. Menu
Vic Connect To	
Default Behavior	Sabo Clear 0 Er
Rutton Commando: (Monu)	weut (Dhone (Ded Tour
Pool Co DVD Player: Menu : Send via Default	t Device Maye
h-st/0	Цр
input/O	Maye
UPS Add Compand	Dolds Command
Fuent Isoppor	
	Annhy
Content	трру

 •

 ······································

Lesson 8 Built-in Sources



Overview

This lesson shows you how to set up a few basic A/V sources in the g! software.

You will:

- Learn how sources are organized in the Configurator.
- Use the Configurator to setup a few different source devices with built-in drivers.
- Learn about how the g! software controls various types of sources.
- Learn about built-in interfaces, customizable interfaces, and interface templates.

Sample House

Our sample house will have five source devices that will be used in various zones that are to be configured in later lessons.

- 1 MP3 Player (Internal Player built in audio source)
- 2 AM/FM Tuners (ELAN DT22) controlled via RS-232
- 1 Integra DVD changer controlled via RS-232

Requirements

• A PC running g!Demo and g!Connect Pro.

-or-

• ELAN Controller and g!Connect Pro.

Basic Source Overview

Overview The following diagram shows the basic source equipment in a system schematically. The diagram includes the components that are important to the ELAN controller.



Terms

The following terms are used in the Configurator:

- **Communication Device:** The serial port, Ethernet port, or other method used to communicate with the source device.
- **Source:** Sources provide the A/V media that is to be controlled in the home. Examples include Tuners, MP3 Players, Cable and Satellite boxes, CD & DVD Players, Music and Movie Servers, etc.
- **Interface:** The button layout that makes up the user interface in the Viewer. Some sources have built-in interfaces, others are customizable.

How-to To integrate a source device:

- Add the Communication Device, IR Device, etc. as required for the source control
- Add the Source
- For sources that do not have a built-in interface, add the interface

Note: Adding a source into the Configurator does not result in the source being added to the Viewer. The source must be assigned to a Zone Controller before it will be available for use. See the following Home Theater and Distributed A/V Lessons for details on adding a Zone Controller.

Exercise 1: Add the Internal Player

- *Overview* In this exercise you will configure the Internal Player and add music files. This source is used to play digital music (MP3 or WAV files) through the ELAN Controller audio outputs as a source to an audio zone controller. This source includes a built-in two-way driver and built-in interface. Since this source is internal to the ELAN Controller we only need to add the source device. Both the COM device and interface are built-in.
- How-to 1. Add the MP3 Player.
 - a. On the **Media** tab in the Configurator, right-click **MP3 Players** and select **Add New MP3 Player**. *The Add New MP3 window opens.*

	an o'r idyor			
Name	Internal Playe	er		
Device T	ype			
Axonix M	lediaDeck 2			
Axonix M	lediaDeck 3,4			
Barix Ex	treamer			
ELAN VI	ADJ (Series 1)			
ELAN VI	ADJ (Series 2)			
Escient	Fireball E-120			
Escient	Fireball FP1			-
Internal	Player			
ReQues	t F.Series			-
ReQues	t Fusion,Nitro,	Tera		_
ROKUN	11000 SoundB	ridge		
Russou	nd SMS3 Strea	im		
Slim De	vices SliMP3	• 100 A 10		
SIIM De	vices squeeze	xoa		•
				0.2
	East Douisan	Concol	OV	

b. Select **Internal Player** from the list and click **OK**. *The MP3 Player will appear in the System Tree as shown below.*



- 2. Scan library.
 - a. Navigate to the **Content** tab in the Configurator. In the System Tree, locate **Audio Library Scan Options, Audio Share Folders**.
 - b. Right-click on the C:\Music directory and select Scan Share Now. The Configurator will scan the sample music in this directory to build a library for the Internal Player.



Note: The g!Demo installer will add sample music to the C:\Music directory to provide a sample library for the Viewer during training class. If you are not running the g!Demo you may need to add music to have the system find it. Shared drives on the local network may also be used as music libraries.

3. Once the scan is complete, verify that there are 58 files in the audio share folder.

System	☐ ™ Media Content ☐ ₩ Audio Library Scan Options	\bigcap	Audio Share Folder	
Interface	Audio Share Folders		Patn	C:MUSIC
	Picture Library Scan Options		System #	1137
Security	Picture Share Folders		Item Count	58

Exercise 2: Add a RS-232 Source with a Built-in Driver & Interface

Overview

In this exercise you will configure an ELAN DT22 Dual Tuner. This source device is an example of a source with a built-in two-way driver and a built-in interface. This means that the g! software includes the necessary serial commands to control the tuner and has a built-in interface with all control and feedback automatically configured. Just add the device and you are done—there is no need to create an interface.

Note: For a complete listing of supported devices with built-in drivers, refer to the ELAN website for a listing for all supported devices and links to *Integration Notes* for each.

How-to

- 1. Add the communication device.
 - a. Start the **Configurator**, click the **Media** tab, then right-click **Communication Devices**.
 - b. Select Add New Communication Device. In the dialog box:
 - Select Serial Port in the Type drop-down box.
 - Select ELAN DT22 Tuner (RS-232) in the Communication Type drop-down box.
 - Enter "DT22" as the **Device Name**.
 - Click **OK**.

Add New Communicat	ion Device 🛛 🔀
Device Name	DT22
Туре	Serial Port
Device	V
Communication Type	Elan DT22 Tuner (RS-232)
	Cancel OK

- 2. Set the COM port.
 - a. Select the DT22 communication device on the System Tree. The properties for this device display to the right.



b. Select the desired COM Port in the properties window.

Note: The drop-down menu only shows the ports that are available. If you are running g!Demo on your laptop you will only see available ports on the laptop. Leave the selection set to **NONE** if you are using **g!Demo**.

- 3. Add the ELAN DT22. Since there are two tuners in this device, we will add two tuners to our system configuration.
 - a. On the System Tree, right-click **Tuners**. Select **Add New Tuner** from the menu. *The Add New Tuners window opens.*

Add New Tuner
Name DT22
Device Type
B&K AVR AM/FM Tuner B&K CT Internal AM/FM Tuner Denon AVR Internal AM/FM Tuner Denon AVR Internal HD Tuner Denon AVR Internal Sirius Tuner Denon AVR Internal XM Tuner Denon AVR-XX08CI Internal AM/FM Tuner Elan DT22 AM/FM Tuner Elan DT22 AM/FM Tuner Elan DTNR AM/FM Tuner Generic AM/FM Tuner Integra 3.7 AM/FM Tuner
Search For Devices Cancel OK

b. Select **ELAN DT22 AM/FM Tuner**, and click **OK** to add the tuner. The tuner is added to the System Tree and automatically connects to the COM Device.

- 4. Select the **Tuner** in the System Tree. In the properties window:
 - Change the name to AM/FM Tuner 1
 - Set the Tuner ID to 1
 - Click Apply to save.



5. Repeat the steps above to add the second tuner to the system. Name the Tuner **AM/FM Tuner 2**, and set the **Tuner ID** to **2**.



Note: The Dual Tuner configuration is now complete. Since this device has a built-in interface it can be directly configured as a source in a zone controller. In the following lessons you will add this device as a source to a zone controller and be able to see it in the Viewer.

Exercise 3: Add a RS-232 Source with a Built-in Driver & Customizable Interface

Overview

In this exercise you will configure an Integra DVD Changer. This source device is an example of a source with a built-in two-way driver and a customizable interface. This means that the g! software includes the necessary serial commands to control the changer and provides a set of interface templates that have the commands pre-mapped. Once a template is connected to the device, the control is automatically configured. The template also provides the ability to customize – add, remove, or change controls as needed. In this exercise you will add the DVD Changer and the interface, and verify that the mapping is correct.

How-To 1. Add the communication device.

- a. Start the Configurator, click the **Media** tab, and then right-click **Communication Devices**.
- b. Select Add New Communication Device. In the dialog box:
 - Select Serial Port in the Type drop-down box.
 - Select Standard Connection in the Communication Type drop-down box.
 - Type the name "DVD" as the Device Name.
 - Click OK.

Add New Communication	Device	×
Device Name	DVD	
Туре	Serial Port	•
Device		7
Communication Type	Standard Connection	•
	Cancel OK	

- 2. Set the COM Port.
 - Select the DVD communication device on the System Tree. The properties for this device display to the right.



b. Select the desired COM Port in the properties window.

Note: The drop-down menu only shows the ports that are available. If you are running g!Demo on your laptop you will only see available ports on the laptop. Leave the selection set to **NONE** if you are using **g!Demo**.

- 3. Add the Integra DVD Player.
 - a. On the System Tree, right-click **DVD Players**. Select **Add New DVD Player** from the menu. *The Add New DVD Player window opens*.

Add New DVD Player	×
Name Integra DPC-7.4,7.5,8.5 (RS-232)	
Device Type	
Arcam DV29 Axonix MediaDeck 2 Axonix MediaDeck 3,4 Denon DVD-1940Cl Denon DVD-3910,5910 Escient Fireball DVDM-100 Integra DPC-7.5 (RI System) Integra DPC-7.5 (RI System) Integra DPS-10.5 (RS-232) Marantz DV4001,DV6001,DV7001 Marantz DV7600,9500 Sony DVP-CX777ES Sunfire TGM-100 Movie Player Video ReQuest	
Search For Devices Cancel OK	

- b. Select Integra DPC-7.4,7.5,8.5 (RS-232), and click OK to add the DVD Player. The DVD Player is added to the System Tree.
- c. Select the DVD Player in the System Tree. In the properties window:
 - Select the Communication Device DVD from the drop-down list.
- Click Apply. alDe Media System DVD Player : Integra DPC-7.4,7.5,8.5 (RS-232) System Audio Library Options Integra DPC-7.4,7.5,8.5 (RS-232) Name Interface Communication Devices 6254 DT22 Security Integra DPC-7.4,7.5,8.5 (RS-232) Device Type DVD MP3 Players Communication Device DVD AM/FM Tuner 1 Lighting AM/FM Tuner 2 OVD Players

 Ovd Players

 Ovd Players

 Ovdeo DPC-7.4,7.5,8.5 (RS-232)

 Video Displays Media Messaging 💷 IR Display Projecto Keypad Controllers Keypads and Interfaces
 Satellite Box Irrigation Cable TV Pool Contro DVD Player 🛨 🚦 Interface Templates Input/Outpu nterface Groups Event Mapper
- 4. Add the Interface.

•

- On the Configurator Media tab, right-click Keypads and Interfaces a. in the System Tree, then select Add New Interface. The Add New Interface window opens.
- b. Type **DVD Changer** in the **Interface Name** field.
- c. Select DVD 6-Disc from the Create From Template drop-down menu.
- d. Select Integra DPC-7.4,7.5,8.5 (RS-232) from the Connect To Device drop-down list. This step defines the Integra DVD as the default device for this interface and in turn assigns the buttons on the Viewer Interface to the proper commands on the DVD Changer.

Add New Interface	×
Interface Name	DVD Changer
Create From Template	DVD 6-Disc
Connect to Device	Integra DPC-7.4,7.5,8.5 (RS-2 💌
	Cancel OK

Click OK to add the new interface. e.

- 5. Check the interface.
 - a. Click the plus sign (+) next to the **DVD Changer** interface in the System Tree to expand it.



- b. Verify the Integra driver is selected as the **Default Device**.
- c. Select the 800 x 600 resolution to view its button layout.
- d. Click the **Rewind** button to display the **Audio Button Properties** dialogue box. Verify the Funct. (Universal Fuction) is set to Rewind. *This means that when this button is pressed in the Viewer the Rewind command will be issued to the default device assigned to this interface.*

📕 g!Demo : Confi	igurator
System	Media System
Interface	Audio Button Properties
Security	Name Corr
Climate	Face Color Select Color.
Lighting	Radius 0 🔽 Default
Media	Shade in 0 If Default 1 2 3 Shade Out 0 If Default 1 2 3
Messaging	Style Rewind Border
Video	Text Size 12 pt V Default Align Top Icon 2xTxt V
Irrigation	Text Quality Funct. Rewind Connect To
Pool Control	🔽 Default Behavior
Input/Output	□ DVD Changer □ # 800 x 600 Layout (Touchscre
UPS	I # 800 x 480 Layout (Touchscreen) I # 240 x 320 Layout (Phone/iPod I # Marchul
Event Mapper	
Content	Appy

At this time the DVD Changer configuration is complete. In the following lessons you will add this device as a source to a zone controller and be able to see it in the Viewer.

The interface for the DVD Changer is customizable. You can add, move, resize, rename, or remove any controls.

Clicking on any button in the preview of the interface will show its properties dialog box. Clearing the **Default Behavior** check box uncouples the automatic Universal Function control and allows manual command selection via the **Button Command** dialog box.

System	Media System Media System Interface Layout : DVD Changer
Interface	Audio Button Properties
Security	Name Form
Climate	Face Color Select Color
Lighting	Radius 0 🔽 Default
Media	Shade in 0 IV Default 1 2 3 Shade Out 0 IV Default IV 2 3
Messaging	Style Rewind V Border
Video	Text Size 12 pt V Default Align Top Icon 2xTxt V Cear 0 Effer
Irrigation	Connect To
Pool Control	C Default Behavior
Input/Output	Button Commands: () Filegra DPC-7.4,7.5,8.5 (RS-232): Rewind Move
UPS	
Event Mapper	Add Command Defete Command Test
Content	
Notes:

Notes:

Lesson 9

Configuring Distributed A/V Systems



Overview

This lesson shows you how to set up a distributed A/V system with the music sources that were added in the previous lessons.

You will:

- Learn how a multi-zone audio system is organized in the Configurator.
- Configure a zone controller for two zones and five sources.
- Learn how a video distribution system is organized in the Configurator.
- Configure a video distribution system with two sources and two zones.
- Configure the video switch to follow the audio (Slaving).
- Add Video Displays to a zone and configure their power and input functions.
- Check the Viewer interface to confirm proper configuration.
- Understand the various features available in the Viewer.

Sample House

Our sample house will be configured with two distributed A/V zones:

- Living Room
- Bedroom

Requirements

• A PC running g!Demo and g!Connect Pro.

-or-

• ELAN Controller and g!Connect Pro.

Distributed A/V Integration Overview

Overview The following diagram shows the equipment in a five source / two zone distributed A/V system schematically, illustrating the components that are important to the ELAN controller.





Integrating a distributed A/V system with ELAN will provide the homeowner control of their audio system through the g! Viewer. For each A/V zone in their home, they will be able to:

- Turn the zone on and off
- Select and control a source for the zone
- Adjust the audio volume in the zone
- Change the zone settings, such as bass and treble

A note about Media Application licensing:

Included Media functionality: Supports unlimited ELAN Zone Controllers, unlimited Sunfire AVRs, and one AVR (any supported brand) or a single AVR zone 1-way controlled. Unlimited video displays and sources are also included.

Media Pro App: Supports unlimited multi-room zone controllers and unlimited AVRs (any brand with which ELAN integrates). Refer to ELAN's website for a full list of supported controllers.

- *Terms* The following terms are used in the Configurator to describe the equipment in an audio system:
 - **Communication Device:** The method the g! software will use to communicate with an external device, including information about the connection type and protocol.
 - Audio Zone Controller: The device used to distribute audio throughout the home.
 - **Keypads and Interfaces:** A custom defined interface for controlling audio source components.
- *How-to* Integrating a distributed A/V system with ELAN consists of the following steps:
 - Add the Communication Device
 - Add the Zone Controller for the distributed audio
 - Configure the Audio Sources and Zones in the audio zone controller.
 - Add the Zone Controller for the distributed video
 - Configure the Video Sources and Zones in the video zone controller.
 - Assign **Displays** to the audio zones.
 - Slave the video zones to the audio zones

Exercise 1: Add a Communication Device

Overview In the following steps you will add a Communication Device to communicate with the audio zone controller, in our example an ELAN S8.6. The Communication Device is the bridge between the g! software and the zone controller, and is where you will specify how the systems are physically connected and what communication protocol should be used.

Note: Actual system setup may be different depending upon which zone controller is installed on site. Refer to the *Integration Notes* for the particular zone controller for details.

How-to 1. Start the Configurator, click the **Media** tab at left, then click **Communication Devices.**

- 2. Right-click **Communication Device** and select **Add New Communication Device**. *The Add New Communication Device window opens.*
 - a. Select Serial Port in the Type drop-down box
 - b. Select ELAN System in the Communication Type drop-down box.
 - c. Enter "S8.6" as the **Device Name**.
 - d. Click OK.

Add New Communication	Device
Device Name	S8.6
Туре	Serial Port
Device	
Communication Type	ELAN System
	Cancel OK

Quick Reference: Add New Communication Device			
Device Name	Enter a name for the external device. This can be any name, but should be descriptive so that you can identify this specific device in the Configurator. DO NOT leave this field set to "New Device".		
Туре	The type of connection you are using, such as serial port or Ethernet.		
Device	This field will populate only if needed, depending on the selected Type.		
Communication Type	This is the protocol of the communication. See the Integration Note for the specific zone controller for more information.		

- 3. Select the **S8.6** communication device in the System Tree as shown below.
- 4. In the properties window at right, select the COM Port to which this system is connected, then click **Apply**.

Note: The drop-down menu only shows the ports that are available. If you are running g!Demo on your laptop you will only see available ports on the laptop. Leave the selection set to **NONE** if you are using **g!Demo.**

glDemo:Con	figurator			
System	Media System	Communication E	evice: S8.6	
Interface	Source Preview Options	Name	S8.6	
	Communication Devices	System #	6601	
Security		Device Type	Serial Port / ELAN System	
or:	🗖 🔤 😒 S8.6	Location	< SELECT >	
Climate	MP3 Players	Enable Sharing	No	
liahtina	AM/EM Tuper 1	Sharing Port	0	
	AM/FM Tuner 2	COM Port	NONE	
Vledia	🖃 🧭 DVD Players	Protocol	RS232	
	Office of the second seco	Baud Rate	19200	
Messaging	Uldeo Displays	Flow Control	None	
Video	Projector	Parity	None	
	Keypad Controllers	Data Bits	8	
Irrigation	Audio Zone Controllers	Stop Bits	1	
Pool Control				
Input/Output				
UPS				
Event Mapper				
		Apply		
Content				

Exercise 2: Add the Audio Zone Controller

Overview Before beginning this exercise, be sure you have completed Exercise 1 of this lesson, *Add the Communication Device*. Now that the Communication Device is configured, you need to add in the Audio Zone Controller prior to adding the sources and configuring the zones.

In a distributed A/V installation, the zone controller is the heart of the whole house audio system. <u>The main Media icon will not appear in the Viewer until a zone</u> <u>controller has been added in the Configurator</u>.

In the steps below, you will add an Elan S8.6 multi-room audio system to the Configurator.

Note: Actual system setup may be different based on the audio equipment installed on site. Refer to the *Integration Notes* for the particular details for your system.

- How-to
 1. In the Configurator, right-click Audio Zone Controllers, then click Add New Audio Zone Controller window opens.
 - 2. Select ELAN S8.6 AV (6 Zones) as shown, and then click OK.

Add New A	udio Zone Controller	×
Name	ELAN S8.6 AV (6 Zones)	
Device T	уре	
Denon A Denon A Denon A Denon A ELAN S ELAN S	AVR-4308CI AVR-4806 AVR-5308CI AVR-5308CI 8.6 AV (12 Zones) 8.6 AV (18 Zones) 8.6 AV (24 Zones) 8.6 AV (24 Zones) 9stem12 (16 Zones) 9stem12 (24 Zones) 9stem12 (32 Zones) 9stem12 (8 Zone) 83 (16 Zones) 83 (24 Zones)	
Search	For Devices Cancel Of	<

3. Select the **Elan S8.6 AV** audio zone controller in the System Tree and verify the communication device in the properties window. *The Communication Device added in the previous exercise should automatically be selected for the Zone Controller.*

🮒 g!Demo∶Conf	igurator			- 🗆 ×
System	Media System Audio Library Options	Audio Zone Controller	ELAN S8.6 AV (6 Zones)	
Interface	Source Preview Options	Name System #	ELAN S8.6 AV (6 Zones) 6602	
Security		Device Type	ELAN S8.6 AV (6 Zones)	
Climate	MP3 Players	Communication Device	88.6	•
Lighting	AM/FM Tuner 1			
Media	DVD Players Ø Integra DPC-7.4,7.5,8.5 (RS-232)			
Messaging	🖃 🖿 Video Displays			
Video	Projector Keypad Controllers			
Irrigation	Audio Zone Controllers			
Pool Control				
Input/Output	⊢ ■ Keypads and Interfaces ★ Satellite Box			
UPS				
Event Mapper		Amelia		
Content		Арру		

Exercise 3: S8.6 Source Settings

Overview In the following steps, you will see how the Configurator can be used to set up the Source Volume and IR routing settings on an ELAN S8.6 AV.

Source Volume settings are used to equalize the sound levels for each selected source to prevent the user from needing to adjust the volume up or down for each source selected. The IR routing table defines how IR will pass thru the S8.6 chassis.

Note: The settings described in this exercise are only available for ELAN equipment.

How-to

- 1. Start the **Configurator** and click the **Media** tab at the left.
- 2. Select **Sources** under the **ELAN S8.6 AV (6 Zones)**. The Source Setting Matrix is shown on the right.
 - Right click the values in the Audio Input column to change the volume level for the selected input.
 - Click in the IR routing table to change the IR routing in the chassis.

Audio Library Options	Sources								
Source Preview Options	Source NailR 1	IR 2	IR 3	IR 4	IR 5	IR 6	IR 7	IR 8	Audio Input
E 😨 Communication Devices	Source X	-	100	-	4	142		-	0
🔲 😴 DT22	Source								0
	Source								
🗌 🚅 S8.6	Source								
MP3 Players	Source								
🔄 📼 Tuners	Source								
C AM/FM Tuner 1	Source								
🗌 📼 AM/FM Tuner 2	Source								
🖃 🤣 DVD Players									
🗌 🤣 Integra DPC-7.4,7.5,8.5 (RS-232)									
🖃 📰 Video Displays									
🔲 🔳 IR Display									
🗌 📟 Projector									
Keypad Controllers			Ir	nport Settir	ngs from D	evice			
🖃 🛲 Audio Zone Controllers									
🖃 🛲 ELAN S8.6 AV (6 Zones)	-								
E Sources									

Quick Reference: S8.6 AV Source Settings			
Source Name	The names of the sources. See the source exercise below for more details.		
IR 1-8	IR routing matrix. This matrix allows configuration of IR routing through the S8.6 chassis.		
	Note: These setting have no effect on IR outputs from Global Cache or the HC series controllers.		
	Select the IR output jack for each source. An "X" indicates that IR received by the chassis zone input will be passed to that port when the selected source is active. In the screen above, for example, if IR is received to control source 2, AM/FM, the IR will be routed to IR output 2.		
Audio Input	The source volume level. Use these adjustments (+ / –) on each source to maintain equivalent source volumes throughout the system.		
Import Settings from Device	(Optional) If the chassis has already been configured, click this button to read in the existing settings from the device.		

Exercise 4: Add Sources to the Zone Controller

Overview In a typical installation, sources are assigned to specific inputs on the zone controller. The g! software needs to know which sources are assigned to each input so that the correct signals can be sent to the zone controller based on user input in the Viewer interface. This procedure is the same for all supported Audio Zone Controllers.

For our Sample House, we will be configuring the three audio and two video sources added in Lessons 6, 7, and 8.

- Source 1 will be the Internal Player.
- Sources 2 and 3 will be the two audio feeds from the ELAN DT22.
- Source 4 will be the Generic Serial DVD player.
- Source 5 will be the Satellite box.
- How-to
 1. In the Media tab System Tree, click the plus (+) sign next to Sources to expand the Source List for the ELAN S8.6 zone controller added in Exercise 2.



Note: The names shown for sources should match the input names printed on the back of the zone controller

2. Select **(Source 1)** from the list of available sources. The properties for (Source 1) display in the window on the right.

Audio Source:	
System #	8265
Source Device	< NONE >
Display Icon	Select Icon
Source Volume	
Display Name	

3. Select **MP3 Player: Internal Player** from the **Source Device** drop-down list as the source device for (Source 1), then click **Apply.** *The* (*Source 1*) *entry in the System Tree changes to show its association with the Internal Player, and the Player itself is highlighted to indicate that it is the device referenced by the source.*



Note: To ensure proper control, the source devices must be connected to the same physical input that is specified in the Configurator.

4. In the properties window, click the **Select Icon** button. *The Select Icon* window opens.

5. Click the plus (+) sign next to the lcons folder, then select the **Media** subfolder. The built-in icons display in the window. Select the icon you wish to use for the source and click **OK**.



6. Change the **Display Name** entry to something more user-friendly, like "MP3 Player". *The Display Name is what will appear in the Viewer.*

g!Demo:C	Configurator			_ 🗆 🗵
System	Media System Audio Library Options	Audio Sourc	e: MP3 Player: Inter	nal Player
Interface	Source Preview Options	System # Source Device	6622 MP3 Player: In	ternal Player 💌
Security		Diastaulasa	21	Calent Inco
Climate	MP3 Players	Display Icon		Select icon
Lighting	Internal Player	Source Volume	50 %	▼
-3		Display Name	MP3 Player	
Media	AM/FM Tuner 1			
Messaging	DVD Players Ø DVD Players Ø Integra DPC-7.4,7.5,8.5 (RS-232)			
Video	─ ─ Video Displays			
Irrigation	Projector Keypad Controllers			
Pool Control	Audio Zone Controllers ELAN S8.6 AV (6 Zones)			
Input/Output	Sources Source 01) MP3 Player: Inten			
UPS	Source 02) Source 03)			
Event Mappe	er Source 04)	a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a		
Content	(Source 06)		Apply	

- 7. Repeat steps 2 through 6 to add the DT22 to Source 2 and Source 3.
 - Select the first AM/FM Tuner 1 for (Source 2).
 - Select the second AM/FM Tuner 2 for (Source 3).



- 8. Select Source 4 on the S8.6AV to add the DVD changer.
 - a. From the Source Device drop-down, choose "Interface: DVD Changer"
 - b. Assign the DVD Changer an appropriate icon
 - c. Change the Display Name of the DVD Changer, if desired.
 - d. Click Apply.



🞒 g!Demo : Conl	figurator		
System	Media System System Audio Library Options	Audio Source:	
Interface	Source Preview Options	System # Source Device	6626 Interface: Satellite Box
Security			
Climate	S8.6 ─_ MP3 Players	Display Icon	Select Icon
Lighting	Internal Player No Audio Services	Source Volume	Catallite Bay
Media	Tuners AM/FM Tuner 1 AM/FM Tuner 2	Display Name	Satellite DUX
Messaging	OVD Players Ovd Playe		
Video	☐ ■ Video Displays		
Irrigation	Projector Keypad Controllers		
Pool Control	Audio Zone Controllers ELAN S8.6 AV (6 Zones)		
Input/Output	🕞 🚭 Sources		
UPS	Source 02) Tuner: AM/FM Ture (Source 03) Tuner: (Source 03) Tuner: AM/FM Ture (Source 03) Tuner:		
Event Mapper	(Source 04) Interface: DVD Pla		
Content		Apply	

9. Repeat step 8 to add the Satellite Box interface as Source 5.

Exercise 5: Configure Zones

Overview Before beginning this exercise, be sure you have completed *Exercise 2* of this lesson, *Add the Audio Zone Controller*. In this exercise, you will set up the Zone Names and Settings pages for the Audio Zone Controller, and remove unused zones from the Viewer interface.

Giving the zones user-friendly names, such as "Living Room" and "Bedroom" for our sample house, will provide the homeowner with an intuitive interface for controlling the audio in their home. Removing unused zones from the Viewer interface prevents confusion on the part of the homeowner, and also prevents them from turning on a zone to which no speakers are connected.

The optional settings interface gives the user access to less commonly used functions, such as bass, treble, Whole House Audio, Do Not Disturb, and loudness.

How-to1. In the Media tab System Tree click the plus (+) sign next to Zones to expand the Zone List for the ELAN S8.6 zone controller added in Exercise 2.

Audio Zone Controllers
🖃 📼 ELAN S8.6 AV (6 Zones)
🛨 📇 Sources
🖃 🚸 Zones
🗌 🍕 Zone 1
🗌 🍕 Zone 2
🗌 🌗 Zone 3
🗌 🍕 Zone 4
🗌 🍕 Zone 5
🗌 📢 Zone 6

- 2. Click on **Zone 1** in the zone list. *The properties for Zone 1 will display on the right.*
 - a. In the **Name** field, type the name of the first zone in our Sample House, "Living Room", and click **Apply**. *The label of the zone will change in the Zone List to reflect the new name.*
 - b. Repeat Step 2 for Zone 2, to change the name to "Bedroom", your screen should look as below.

📕 g!Demo : Coni	figurator			_ 🗆 🗵
System	Media System Audio Library Options	Audio Zone: Zone	2	
Interface	Source Preview Options	Name System #	Bedroom 6606	
Security	DVD	Universal Receiver	< NONE >	-
Climate	MP3 Players	Settings Interface Display	< NONE >	<u> </u>
Lighting	No Audio Services	Slave Zone Auxiliary Source Funct	< NONE >	
Media	AM/FM Tuner 1	Input Name Displa Source 01 (M	ay On/Off Display Inpu -	it Slave Source
Messaging	OVD Players Monopole (RS-232)	Source 02 (Tu Source 03 (Tu		-
Video	☐ ■ Video Displays	Source 04 (Int Source 05 (Int		: V
Irrigation	Projector Keypad Controllers	Source 06 -		• U
Pool Control	Audio Zone Controllers ELAN S8.6 AV (6 Zones)	Source Display Name	From Zone	Show Source
Input/Output		AM/FM Tuner 1	AM/FM Tuner 1	Yes Yes
UPS	 U Living Room Bedroom 	DVD Player	DVD Player	Yes Ves
Event Mapper	Cone 3	Satenite Dox	Satellite Dox	Tes
Content	0 () Zone 5	Apply		

3. To add the optional Zone Settings page, right-click the Living Room zone and select **Create Settings Page for this Zone**.

A new entry is added under Keypads and Interfaces in the System Tree called Living Room: Settings. Also, the Settings Interface field in the Zone properties window changes to show that the Living Room: Settings interface is assigned to this zone.



- 4. Under **Keypads and Interfaces**, click the plus (+) sign to the left of **Living Room: Settings** to expand the list.
 - a. Select **800x600 Layout (Touchscreen)** to display a representation of the settings page for this zone.



b. Select **Bass** at the top of the Interface Layout. The control is highlighted in yellow and the Audio Sound Adjust Properties window opens.

Note: In the Viewer, this object appears as a Bass tone control slider that allows the homeowner to increase or decrease the bass in the zone.

- c. Note the following in the Audio Sound Adjust Properties window:
 - The **Name** field is set to "Bass". This corresponds to the label on the control.
 - The Style drop-down is set to Bass Control.
 - The **Connect To** drop-down is set to "Living Room", indicating that this is the zone the slider controls:

Audio Soun	d Adjust Propertie	5			×
Name	Bass			F	licture
Text Color		Select C	Color	V L	lse Default
Face Color		Select (Color	Γ ι	lse Default
🗖 Transpa	ent (Requires Backgr	ound Textu	re)		
Radius					Static
Shading				_	Static
Shading]			_	Static
Style	Bass Control 💌	Border			~
Text Size	24 pt 💌	Align			7
Text Quality	_	Funct.			7
Connect To	Living Room				-

Note: The Settings page is fully customizable and any of the objects on this page can be moved and resized so that controls can be added if needed.

Exercise 6: S8.6 Zone Settings

Overview The following steps will guide you through setting up the default behavior for individual zone volumes and paging behavior on an Elan S8.6 AV.

There are four volume settings for each zone on the S8.6AV- Max Volume, Min Vol Turn On, Max Vol Turn On, and Page Volume.

The ELAN S8.6 AV includes paging functionality which can be used in conjunction with a C2 (COM2) Communications Controller for doorbell and intercom Communication throughout the home.

Each of these settings will be explored in more depth below.

Note: The settings described in this exercise are only available for ELAN equipment.

How-to

- 1. In the Configurator, go to the **Media** tab.
- 2. In the System Tree, locate the **Elan S8.6AV (6 Zones)** under Audio Zone Controllers and click on **Zones.** *The Zones volume and paging settings are displayed in the properties window on the right:*

Zone Name	May Values	Min Mat T	ium On May Met To		10/140	Palanan	00	DB Valuese
Living Room	100			m On Page Volume 75	X	Dalance 0	X	75 DB Volume
Bedroom	100	0	100	75	X	0	x	75
Zono 2	100	0	100	75	v	0	Ŷ	75
Zone 4	100	0	100	75	×		~	75
Zone E	100		100	75			Ŷ	75
Zone 5	100		100	13	Ŷ	0	÷	15
	Default F	Paging	Group Paging					
Zono Nome	ие. Л							
Living Room	VVN P	age						
Bedroom								
Zone 3								
Zone 4								
Zone 5								
Zone 6								
C.		Impor	t Settings from Dev	ice				

Quick Reference: S8.6 AV Zone Volume Settings					
Volume Control					
Max Volume	The Maximum volume allowed for a zone. Use this setting to prevent unpleasant volume levels or speaker damage in a zone.				
Min Vol Turn On	The minimum volume level for a zone when it is turned on. If the zone is turned off with the volume below this point, it will return to this level when reactivated.				
Max Vol Turn On	The maximum volume level for a zone when it is turned on. If the zone is turned off with the volume above this point, it will return to this level when reactivated.				
Page Volume	The default volume for paging. Can be set from 0% (Off) to 100%. Default is 75%.				
WHM	An "X" in this column designates that the zone participates in the Whole House Music functionality of the controller.				
Paging Preferenc	es				
WH Page Type	Default Paging . When Default Paging is selected, all zones on the S8.6 AV will switch to paging mode when a page is received. Default is On (X).				
	Group Paging . If Group Paging is selected, zones can be grouped to respond to pages differently. Default is Off (-).				
WH Page	Select zones to participate in paging functionality. By default, all zones are selected for paging.				
Pg Group 1 – Pg Group 8	These columns display when Group Paging is selected as the WH Page Type. Eight paging groups are provided for paging customization. Each zone can be set to be a member of a group. By default, zones are only members of the WH (whole house) group.				

- 3. Right-click the **Living Room Max Volume** and set the value to 75. This will prevent the living room zone from exceeding 75% volume. Note that when this setting is changed, the Max Vol Turn On setting changes to reflect the new Max Volume settings.
- 4. Right-click the **Living Room Min Vol Turn On** and set the value to 15. This tells the S8.6 AV to set the volume to at least 15% when the zone is activated.
- 5. Right-click the **Living Room Max Vol Turn On** and set the value to 25. This will ensure that when the zone is activated, the volume will be between 15 and 25%.
- 6. Set the values to 50, 10, and 15 for **Max Volume**, **Min Vol Turn On**, and **Max Vol Turn On** respectively for the Bedroom zone.
- Click the "X" in the WHM column for zones 3 through 6 (the X will turn to a -). This will prevent these unused zones from turning on when Whole House Music is selected.

- 8. Right-click the **Paging Volume** for the Living Room zone and set it to 50. This will set the paging volume to 50%.
- 9. Right-click the **Paging Volume** for the Bedroom zone and set it to 25.
- 10. Click the **Apply**. Since this lesson is not using an actual S8.6 click OK to close and ignore and warnings that may popup. When this is complete, your zone settings should look like the screen shown below.

	Max Volume	Min Vol Tu	Im On Max Vol Tu	Irn On Page Volume	WHM	Balance	DB	DB Volume
Living Room	75	15	25	50	Х	0	Х	75
Bedroom	50	10	15	25	Х	0	Х	75
Zone 3	100		100					
Zone 4	100		100					
Zone 5	100		100				X	
Zone 6	100		100	75				
WH Page Typ	Default F be: X	^D aging	Group Paging -					
WH Page Typ Zone Name	Default F be: X WH P	Paging Page	Group Paging -					
WH Page Typ Zone Name Living Room	Default F be: X WH P -	Paging Page	Group Paging -					
WH Page Typ Zone Name Living Room Bedroom	Default F be: X WH P - -	Paging Page	Group Paging -					
WH Page Typ Zone Name Living Room Bedroom Zone 3	Default F be: X WH P - - - -	Paging Yage	Group Paging -					
WH Page Typ Zone Name Living Room Bedroom Zone 3 Zone 4	Default F be: X WH P - - - - -	Paging Yage	Group Paging -					
WH Page Typ Zone Name Living Room Bedroom Zone 3 Zone 4 Zone 5	Default F se: X WH P - - - - - - -	Paging Yage	Group Paging -					
WH Page Typ Zone Name Living Room Bedroom Zone 3 Zone 4 Zone 5 Zone 6	Default F pe: X WH P - - - - - - - -	Paging Page	Group Paging -					

Exercise 7: Configure Displays for the Zones

- *Overview* In this exercise, you will use the Configurator to assign and configure the display behavior on a source-by-source basis.
- *How-to* 1. In the Configurator, go to the **Media** tab.
 - 2. Expand the zone list on the **S8.6AV** and select the **Living Room** zone. *The Zone Properties will be displayed to the right.*
 - From the **Display** drop-down, select **Projector**. The Projector will be added as the display for this zone, and the Display On/Off and Display Source columns will populate with the words "Don't Change":



- 4. Configure the behavior of the display for each source listed in the **Input Name** column. Usually, the display is shut off for audio only sources, and turned on for sources with a video feed.
 - a. The Internal Player is an audio only source. In the **Display On/Off** column under Auxiliary Source Functions, right-click **Don't Change** to pop up a menu with other options. Select **Turn Off** from the list.
 - b. Repeat step 4a for the other two audio-only sources, the two feeds from the Elan Dual Tuner to set the display to turn off when they are selected.
 - c. Source 4 (DVD Changer) and Source 5 (Satellite) are A/V sources, so set the Display On/Off value to Turn On for both.
 - d. Click Apply.

nput Name	Display On/Off	Display Input
Source 01 (Interna	l Player) Turn Off	Don't Change
Source 02 (AM/FM	A TunerTurn Off	Don't Change
Source 03 (AM/FM	/I TunerTurn Off	Don't Change
Source 04 (DVD F	Player) Turn On	Don't Change
Source 05 (Satelli	te Box) Don't Cherry	Don't Change
Source 06	Don't Ch	Don't Change
Source 07	Don't Ch	Don't Change
Source 08	Don't Ch 🗸 Don't C	Change Don't Change

Note: In later exercises, you will add a video switch to the Configurator, so we assume here that all video sources will use the same input on the projector. If there is no video switch in your actual setup, you can change the input of the display in the **Display Input** column. Right-click in the column and select a different input from the popup list.

	No Audio Services	Marine 11	Listen Room			
Interface	- Tuners	reame	Living Room			_
	AM/FM Tuner 1	System #	8246			
Security	AM/T-M Tuner 2	Universal Receiver	< NONE >			13
	2 Interna DPC-7 4 7 5 8 5 (RS-232	Settings Interface	Living Room: Se	tings		
Climate	🖂 🖬 Video Displays	Display	Projector			
Linkting	Theater TV	Slave Zone	< NONE >			
Lignung	Projector	Auxiliary Source Fur	nctions			
Media	Keypad Controllers	Innut Name	Display Oo/Off	Display Input	Slave Source	
	🖂 🛲 Audio Zone Controllers	Source 01 (HomeL	Turn Off	Don't Change		
Messaging	ELAN S8.6 AV (6 Zones)	Source 02 (AM/F	Turn Off	Don't Change		
	- A Zones	Source 03 (AM/F	Turn Off	Don't Change		
Video	Living Room	Source 04 (DVD C	Turn On	Don't Change		
	G Bedroom	Source 05 (Satenite,	Panit Channes	Don't Change	Component	
Irrigation	🗌 🌖 Zone 3	Source 07	Don't Change	Don't Change	HOMI	
	🔲 🏮 Zone 4	Source 08	Don't Change	Don't Change	✓ Don't Change	6
Pool Control	G Zone 5	Zone Sources				
	C Zone 6	Source Display Nam	e From Zo		Show Source	
input/Output	Keypads and interfaces	MP3 Player	HomeL	ogic Internal Player	Yes	
LIDE	OVD Channer	AM/FM Tuner 1	AM/FM		Yes	
ura	Living Room, Settings	AM/FM Tuner 2	AM/FM	Tuner 2	Yes	
Event Manner	🔲 🚦 800 x 600 Layout (Touchscree	DVD Changer	DVD CI	DVD Changer Yes		
Liter mapper	🔲 📕 800 x 480 Layout (Touchscree	Satenze	Satente			
Content	240 x 320 Layout (iPhone/iPod S22					
Floor Plan	Interface Templates Interface Groups	Abby				

5. Select the **Bedroom** zone on the **S8.6**. Select **IR Display** as the display for the bedroom, and then follow the steps above to assign the power states for each source:

📕 g!Demo : I	Configurator					_ 🗆 ×
System	Media System	Audio Zone: Bedi	room			
Interface	Source Preview Options	Name System #	Bedroom 6606			
Security		Universal Receiver	< NONE >			-
Climate	MP3 Players	Display	IR Display			
Lighting	No Audio Services	Slave Zone Auxiliary Source Fund	< NONE >			<u>·</u>
Media	AM/FM Tuner 1	Input Name Source 01 (Internal F	Display On/Off Pl Turn Off	Display Input Don't Change	Slave Source	\square
Messaging	DVD Players Ø Integra DPC-7.4,7.5,8.5 (RS-232)	Source 02 (AM/FM] Source 03 (AM/FM]	Րս Turn Off Րս Turn Off	Don't Change Don't Change		
Video	🖃 🖿 Video Displays	Source 04 (DVD Pla Source 05 (Satellite	yer) Turn On B Turn On	Don't Change Don't Change		
Irrigation	Projector Keypad Controllers	Source 06 Zone Sources	Don't Change	Don't Change		
Pool Contro	I	Source Display Name	From Zone	e Javer	Show Source	
Input/Outpu	t	AM/FM Tuner 1 AM/FM Tuner 2	AM/FM T	uner 1 uner 2	Yes	
UPS	Living Room	DVD Player Satellite Box	DVD Play Satellite F	ver Jox	Yes	
Event Mapp	per 0 Zone 3					
Content	© 0 Zone 5	Apply				

Exercise 8: Add the Video Switch and Configure Sources and Zones

- *Overview* In this exercise, you will use the Configurator to add an Elan V85 Component Video Switch to the system. The g! software considers any media switching device to be a Zone Controller, so the V85 will be added as such.
- *How-to* 1. In the **Configurator**, go to the **Media** tab.
 - 2. Right-click Audio Zone Controllers in the system tree and select Add New Audio Zone Controller. The Add New Audio Zone Controller window opens.

Name El	an V85 (8	Zones)	-			r.
Dovice Type						
Device Type						
Elan V8 (8 2	Zones)					ß
Elan V85 (1	6 Zones)					
Elan V85 (2	4 Zones)					
Elan V85 (3	2 Zones)				_	
Elan V85 (8	Zuries)	\				
Elan V003 (24 Zones	(
Elan V883 (32 Zones	Ś				
Elan V883 (8 Zones)	·				
Extron Cros	sPoint 30	0 88HV/				
Generic Sin	gle Zone	Controll	er			
Integra DTF	4.6/DTF	R 5.6 / D	TR 6.67	DTR 7.	6	
Integra DTF	7.4/DTF	R 5.4				
Integra DTF	2-4.9				-	l I
	andres					
		Ca	ncel		OK	

3. Select **Elan V85 (8 Zone)** as the Device Type, then click **OK**. *The V85 Video Switch is added to the Configurator.*



Note that the Elan V85 has the Communication Device from the S8.6 assigned automatically. This is because the serial connections on the two devices are typically daisy-chained together.

- 4. Expand the list of sources on the V85.
 - a. Select (Source 1) in the system tree, then select Interface: DVD Changer from the Source Device drop-down list in the properties window.
 - b. Select (Source 2) in the system tree, then select Interface: Satellite as the Source Device in the properties window.

Note: You do not need to select an icon for the sources on a video switcher—the device will be hidden from the viewer and its switching will be automated based on the sources selected on the S8.6. See the following exercise on 'slaving' for details.

- 5. Expand the **Zones** list for the V85.
 - a. Select Output 1 and name it "Living Room Video", and click Apply.
 - b. Select Output 2 and name it "Bedroom Video", and click Apply.

Note: ELAN recommends that you rename all video zones with descriptive names to make them easier to identify.



Exercise 9: Configure the Video Switch to Follow Audio Zones (Slaving)

Overview The g! software uses the concept of *Slave Zones* to allow the video signals from the switch to match up with the audio from the zone controller without needing to write complex macros.

A slave zone is assigned to an audio zone via a drop-down list in the master zone's properties. Then, you can specify to which source the slave zone should change when a particular audio source is selected. This allows you to hide the video switch's zone by removing it from the Viewer, yet still maintain full switching functionality.

Note: While it is possible to slave any zone in the system to any other, typical configurations will have the audio zone act as the master and the video zone as the slave. Controlling the audio zone will automatically select the appropriate video source and also provide volume control.

- *How-to* 1. In the Configurator, go to the **Media** tab.
 - a. From the Zone list on the S8.6AV, select the Living Room zone.
 - b. Select Elan V85 (8 Zone) Zone 1 (Living Room Video) from the Slave Zone drop-down in the properties window. The Slave Source column in Auxiliary Source Functions populates with the words "Don't Change" for each of the available sources:



- 2. Next, configure the behavior of the V85 for each source listed in the **Input Name** column.
 - a. The Internal Player is an audio only source. In the **Slave Source** column under Auxiliary Source Functions, leave the selection set to **Don't Change**.
 - b. Do the same for the other two audio only sources, the two feeds from the Elan DT22 Tuner.
 - c. **Source 4 (DVD Player)** and **Source 5 (Satellite)** are A/V sources, so for these right-click **Don't Change** in the **Slave Source** column to popup a list of sources. Select the desired source from the list.
 - Slave Zone Elan V85 (8 Zones) Zone 1 (Living Room Video) • Auxiliary Source Functions Display On/Off Display Input Slave Source Source 01 (Internal ... Turn Off Don't Change Don't Change Source 02 (AM/FM ... Turn Off Don't Change Don't Change Source 03 (AM/FM ... Turn Off Don't Change Don't Change Source 01 (DVD Ch. Source 04 (DVD Ch... Turn On Don't Change Source 05 (Satellite) Turn On Source 02 (Satellite) Don't Change Source 01 (DVD Change Don't Change Source 06 Don't Change Source 02 (Satellite) Source 07 Don't Change Don't Change Source 03 Source 08 Don't Change Don't Change Source 04 Source 05 Zone Sources Source 06 Source Display Name Show So Source 07 MP3 Player Internal Player Yes Source 08 AM/FM Tuner 1 AM/FM Tuner 1 Don't Change AM/FM Tuner 2 AM/FM Tuner 2 Yes DVD Changer DVD Changer Yes

Yes

Satellite

d. Repeat step 2 for the Bedroom zone.

Satellite

Exercise 10: Configure Zones in the Viewer

- *Overview* At this point, you have added in two Zone Controllers with a total of 14 zones. However, only two of those zones will actually be used—the Living Room and the Bedroom. The next step is to remove the unused zones from the Viewer interface so that the homeowner sees an uncluttered and intuitive interface.
- *How-to* To remove the unused zones from the Viewer interface:
 - 1. Select the Interface tab in the Configurator.
 - Under Touch Screen Options near the top of the System Tree, click the plus
 (+) sign to the left of the Windows option to expand the list.
 - 3. Select **Tab Config: Media System**. The list of available/visible zones for the media system display in the properties window on the right.



Visible Tabs= zones that appear in the Viewer for the homeowner to use. **Available Tabs**= zones that are not currently displayed in the Viewer.

Since the Living Room and Bedroom zones are active in our Sample House, we need these zones to be in the **Visible Tabs** list. All of the remaining zones including the video outputs can be put in the Available tabs column hiding them from the viewer interface.

4. In the **Visible Tabs** list, select **Zone 3**, then press and hold your keyboard shift button for multi-select and click the **V85 Output 8** to select all zones to be removed.

glDemo : Coni	ngurator			-0 X
System	Communication Devices	Tab Layout Windows: Me	dia System	
Interface	Interface Devices Touch Screen Options	Default Tab Navigate By Group	< SELECT >	
Security	Default Windows Power Scheme	Navigate to Default Page First	No	1
Climate	User Interface	Enable Page Swipe	No	2
Lighting	Tab Config: Security System	Available Tabs		Visible Tabs
Media	Tab Config: Media System	Zone 3		Living Room
Messaging	Tab Config Messaging	Zone 4 Zone 5		Bedroom
Video	- 4-Tab Config. Pool Control	Living Room Video Bedroom Video	Add Tob >>	
Pool Control	Default 1 Default 2	V85 Output 3 V85 Output 4	<< Remove Tab	
Input/Output	Default 3 Default 4	V85 Output 5 V85 Output 6	Move Up	
UPS	Decourt 5 Default 6 Decourt Settimore	V85 Output 8	Move Down	
Event Mapper	BLACK			
Content	System Images			
Floor Plan				
		Apply		

5. Click the **<<Remove Tab** buttons then click **Apply**. Your screen should look as below.

Notes about adding and removing tabs:

- Working with tabs on the Interface tab in the Configurator only adds/removes the zone from the Viewer on a per-screen basis. The zone is not deleted and can be added back into the Viewer at any time if the homeowner would like to expand their system.
- Multiple zones can be added or removed at one time. Press and hold the SHIFT key on your keyboard and click to select the desired zones then click the add or remove button.
- 3) Each touch screen must be configured separately. In an actual system, each touch screen will have its own listing beneath the Default listing, and zones will need to be removed from each one individually. See the later lesson, GUI and Interfaces for more information.

Exercise 11: Check the Viewer

- *Overview* In the previous lessons and exercises you used the Configurator to set up the ELAN Media system and interfaces. In this exercise you will finally check your configuration in the Viewer.
- How-to1. Click the Restore Down button in the upper-right corner of the Configurator window to exit Full Screen Mode.



- 2. On the **Media** tab, right-click the **Living Room** zone on the **S8.6AV** and select **Show Virtual Zone**. *The Living Room Virtual Zone will be displayed.*
- 3. Right-click the Living Room Video zone on the V85 and select Show Virtual Zone. The Living Room Video Virtual Zone will be displayed.
- 4. Right-click the **Projector** display and select **Show Virtual Display**. *The Projector Virtual Display will be shown.*
- 5. From the g!Connect Pro main screen, click **Start Viewer**. The Viewer interface displays the **Home** page.
- 6. Click the **g!** button in the upper right to access the main systems menu, then click **Media** to view the available media zones.





7. Click the **Living Room** icon to view the Living Room user interface.

8. Arrange the Viewer and the Virtual Displays on your desktop so that all are visible at the same time:

Living Russ	A gloDemo			IN Distriction A
Off On	- <mark>g!</mark> 💿	Living Room		Off On
Source 1 Source 2 Source 3		Power		Source 1
Source 4		SOURCE	-2) MP3 Player	
Source 7 Source 8		0	AM/FM Tuner 1	Off On
			AM/FM Tuner 2	Source 1 Source 2
		VOLUME	DVD Player	Source 3 Source 4
		V	🗲 Satetlite Box	Source 5
		Ж		Source 7

On this screen notice:

- The Sources are listed along the side of the Viewer.
- The Source Names and Icons match those selected in previous *Exercises.*
- The Living Room Virtual Zone shows that the zone is off
- The Projector Virtual Display shows that the display is off.

Note: The Living Room Video zone shows that it is On at this time. This is because the V85 does not have a standby mode. ELAN treats this device as On at all times.

9. Click the **MP3 Player** source button. The built-in MP3 player interface displays.

Notice that the icon selected for the source indicates that this source is selected in this zone. Also note that the Living Room Virtual Zone switches to "On", but since this is an audio only source, the Projector and Video zone do not change.



10. Click the **Source** button on the right and select the **DVD Changer** source. The DVD Player interface displays, the Projector Virtual Display changes to "On", the Living Room Video zone selects Source 1, the Living Room Virtual Zone changes to "Source 4", and the source indicator (icon and name) to the right of the Living Room heading changes.



11. Click the **Source** button on the right and select the **Satellite Box** source. The Satellite Box Custom interface displays, the Projector Virtual Display remains "On", the Living Room Virtual Zone changes to "Source 5", the Living Room Video Virtual Zone changes to "Source 2", and the source indicator (icon and name) for the Living Room changes.



12. Click the **Settings** button. The settings interface opens, providing access to Bass, Treble, Loudness, Whole House Mode, and Do Not Disturb functionality.



13. Click the Settings button again to return to the Living Room Theater page.

Notes:

Lesson 10

Configuring Home Theater Systems



Overview

This lesson shows you how to set up a basic Home Theater receiver with the sources that were added in the previous lessons.

You will:

- Learn how a home theater system is organized in the Configurator.
- Configure a receiver for the home theater.
- Add the internal tuner as a source.
- Configure sources for the home theater receiver.
- Add the Video Display to the home theater and configure its behavior.
- Check the Viewer interface to confirm proper configuration.
- Understand the various features available in the Viewer.

Sample House

Our sample house will be configured with one home theater zone.

Requirements

• A PC running g!Demo and g!Connect Pro.

-or-

- ELAN Controller and g!Connect Pro.
- Understanding of the topics covered in Lessons 6 through 9.

Home Theater Integration Overview

Overview The following diagram shows the equipment in a home theater system schematically, illustrating the components that are important to the ELAN controller.



Integrating a home theater system with the g! Software will provide the homeowner with control of their home theater system through the g! Viewer, enabling them to:

- Turn the zone on and off
- Select and control a source for the zone
- Adjust the audio volume in the zone
- Change the zone settings, such as bass and treble
- Change the listening modes on supported receivers

A note about Media Application licensing:

Included Media functionality: Supports unlimited ELAN Zone Controllers, unlimited Sunfire AVRs, and one AVR (any supported brand) or a single AVR zone 1-way controlled. Unlimited video displays and sources are also included.

Media Pro App: Supports unlimited multi-room zone controllers and unlimited AVRs (any brand with which ELAN integrates). Refer to ELAN's website for a full list of supported controllers.
- *Terms* The following terms are used in the **Configurator** to describe the equipment in a home theater system:
 - **Communication Device:** The method the g! software will use to communicate with an external device, including information about the connection type and protocol.
 - Audio Zone Controller: The surround sound receiver
 - **Keypads and Interfaces:** A custom interface for controlling audio components.
- *How-to* This lesson consists of the following steps:
 - Add the **Communication Device**.
 - Add the **Zone Controller**.
 - Add the video **Displays.**
 - Configure the **Sources** and **Zones** in the Zone Controller.
 - Check for proper operation in the g! Viewer.

Exercise 1: Add a Communication Device

Overview In the following steps you will add a **Communication Device** to communicate with the home theater system, a Sunfire TGR-401 in our example. The **Communication Device** is the bridge between the g! software and the receiver, and is where you will specify how the systems are physically connected and what communication protocol should be used.

Note: Actual system setup may be different depending upon which receiver is installed on site. Refer to the *Integration Notes* for the particular receiver for details.

How-to

- 1. Start the **Configurator** and click the **Media** tab on the left.
 - 2. Right-click **Communication Device** and select **Add New Communication Device**. In the dialog box:
 - a. Enter "Sunfire" as the Device Name.
 - b. Select Serial Port in the Type drop-down box
 - c. Select **Sunfire TGR-401, TGP-401** in the Communication Type drop-down box.
 - d. Click OK.

Add New Communication	Device	×
Device Name	Sunfire	
Туре	Serial Port	•
Device		*
Communication Type	Sunfire TGR-401, TGP-401	•
	Cancel	ОК

Quick Reference: Add New Communication Device				
Device Name	Enter a name for the external device. This can be any name, but should be descriptive so that you can identify this specific device in the Configurator. DO NOT leave this field set to "New Device".			
Туре	The type of connection you are using, such as serial port or Ethernet.			
Device	This field will populate only if needed, depending on the selected Type.			
Communication Type	This is the protocol of the communication. See the <i>Integration Note</i> for the specific device for more information.			

- 3. Select the Sunfire **Communication Device** in the System Tree.
- 4. In the properties window at right, select the port that the device is connected to, then click **Apply**.

Note: The drop-down menu only shows the ports that are available. If you are running g!Demo on your laptop you will only see available ports on the laptop. Leave the selection set to **NONE** if you are using **g!Demo**.



Exercise 2: Add the Receiver

Overview Before beginning this exercise, be sure you have completed Exercise 1, *Add the Communication Device*. Now that the Communication Device is configured, you need to add in the receiver before adding the sources and configuring the zones.

In a typical installation, the receiver is the heart of the home theater system. Note that the g! software considers the receiver to be an Audio Zone Controller, and so that is how you will add it to the Configurator. <u>The Media tab will not appear in the Viewer until a zone controller is added into the Configurator</u>.

Note: Actual system setup may be different based on the audio equipment installed on-site. Refer to the *Integration Notes* for your specific system for more in-depth information.

How-to In the steps below, you will add a Sunfire TGR-401 to the Configurator.

- 1. In the **Configurator** on the Media tab, right-click **Audio Zone Controllers**, then click **Add New Audio Zone Controller**. *The Add New Audio Zone Controller dialog box opens*.
- 2. Select Sunfire TGR-401, TGP-401 as shown below, and then click OK.

dd New Audio Zone Controller	2
Name Sunfire TGR-401, TGP-	401
Device Type	
SpeakerCraft MZC-66 (24 zone)	
SpeakerCraft MZC-88	
SpeakerCraft MZC-88 (16 zone)	
SpeakerCraft MZC-88 (24 zone)	
SpeakerCraft MZC-88 (32 zone)	
Sunfire TGR-3, TGP-5	
Sunfire TGR-401, TGP-401	La constante da
Vaux Lattis (serial)	
Video Storm CMX1616A	
Video Storm CMX1616V	
Video Storm CMX44	
Video Storm CMX84	
Video Storm CMX86	
Video Storm CMX88	-
···· ···	
Search For Devices Cance	el OK

3. Check the properties window. The Communication Device added in the previous exercise should automatically be selected for the Zone Controller.

glDemo : Con	figurator	1993	3		
System	Media System Section Library Options	\bigcap	Audio Zone Controller	: Sunfire TGR-401, TGP-401	
Interface	Communication Devices		Name System #	Sunfire TGR-401, TGP-401 4182	_
Security	\$\$\$ \$8.6		Device Type	Sunfire TGR-401, TGP-401	_
Climate	MP3 Players		Communication Device	Sunfire	•
Lighting	Internal Player No Audio Services				
Media	Tuners AM/FM Tuner 1 AM/FM Tuner 2				
Messaging	DVD Players Ø DVD Players Ø Integra DPC-7.4,7.5,8.5 (RS-232)				
Video	Video Displays				
Irrigation	Projector Keypad Controllers				
Pool Control	Audio Zone Controllers ELAN S8.6 AV (6 Zones)				
Input/Output					
UPS	Elan V85 (8 Zones) ∃ des Sources	\sim			
Event Mapper	Sunfire TGR-401, TGP-401				
Content	E Sources		Apply		

Exercise 3: Add the Internal Tuner Source

Overview In the following exercise, you will add the Sunfire TGR-401, TGP-401 internal tuner to the Configurator.

Many surround sound receivers have AM/FM tuners built in. The g! software can control those tuners using our built-in AM/FM tuner interface; simply add the tuner and connect it as a source to the zone controller. Because the tuner is a part of the receiver, you do not need a separate communication device, it will share the Sunfire communication device added in *Exercise 1: Add the Communication Device*.

How-to

1. On the Media tab, right-click the entry for Tuners in the System Tree, and select **Add New Tuner**. *The Add New Tuner dialog box opens.*



- 2. Scroll through the list and select **Sunfire TGR/TGP-401 Internal AM/FM Tuner**, then click **OK**.
- 3. Check the settings for the tuner in the properties window. The Communication Device should be automatically set to Sunfire.



Note: The Sunfire Communication Device added in the last exercise is highlighted, indicating that the tuner was automatically associated with that Communication Device.

Exercise 4: Configure Sources

Overview Before beginning this exercise, be sure that you have added sources, the Receiver and Internal Tuner. In this exercise you will associate the sources with the appropriate inputs on the receiver.

In a typical installation, sources are assigned to specific inputs on the receiver. The g! software needs to know which sources are assigned to each input so that the correct signals can be sent to the receiver based on user input in the Viewer interface. This procedure is the same for all supported receivers.

For our Sample House, you will configure the sources added in previous lessons, as well as the Internal Tuner.

- How-to
- 1. In the Configurator on the **Media** tab, click the plus sign (+) to expand the Source List for the **Sunfire TGR-401**, **TGP-401** receiver.

Note: The names shown for sources should match the input names printed on the back of the receiver.

2. Select **(CABLE)** from the list of available sources. The properties for (CABLE) will be displayed in the window on the right.



3. From the **Source Device** drop-down list, select **Interface: Cable TV** as the source device for (CABLE), then click **Apply.** The (CABLE) entry in the System Tree changes to reflect its association with the Cable TV Interface. The interface itself is also highlighted to indicate that it is the device referenced by the source.



Note: To ensure proper control, the source devices must be connected to the same physical input as is specified in the Configurator.

- 4. In the properties window, click the **Select Icon** button. *The Select Icon window will open.*
 - a. Click the plus (+) sign next to the lcons folder, then select the Media subfolder. The built-in icons are displayed in the window.
 Select the icon you wish to use for the source and click OK.



- 5. Check the **Display Name** entry. The name should be user friendly, like "Cable TV". *The Display Name is what will appear in the Viewer*.
- 6. Add the remaining sources, DVD Changer and Internal Tuner as follows
 - a. Select the (DVD) source. From the Source Device drop-down list, select Interface:DVD Changer, select an icon and check the display name, then click Apply.
 - b. Select the **(TUNER)** source. From the Source Device drop-down list, select **Tuner: Sunfire TGR/TGP-401 Internal AM/FM Tuner**, select an icon and check the display name, then click **Apply**.
 - c. Your screen should now look like the one below.

🥰 g!Demo∶Co	nfigurator	-0.20	42	
	ELAN S8.6 AV (6 Zones)	\cap	2002220000	
System	🕂 🚭 Sources		Audio Source:	
	🛨 🌗 Zones		0	4105
Interface	🖃 📼 Elan V85 (8 Zones)		System #	4190
	🕂 📇 Sources		Source Device	Tuner: Sunfire TGR/TGP-401 Internal AM/F 💌
Security	🛨 🍕 Zones			
	🖃 📟 Sunfire TGR-401, TGP-401		Dieplay Icon	Select loop
Climate	E Sources		Display icon	
	🗌 📇 (HD/BD)			
Lighting	🗌 📇 (SAT)		Source Volume	v
Lighting	🗌 📇 (DVR)		Display Name	AM/FM Tuner
Madia	🗌 📇 (MP3)			1 <u>. </u>
wedia	📃 📇 (DVD) Interface: DVD Changer	\sim	6	
	🗌 📇 (CABLE) Interface: Cable TV			
Messaging	🗌 📇 (VCR)			
	🗌 📇 (CD)			
Video	🗌 📇 (HD/BD-7.1)			
	SIRIUS)			
Irrigation	TUNER) Tuner: Sunfire TGR/T			
	🗌 📇 (FRONT)			
Pool Control	🕂 🌔 Zones			
	🖃 📕 Keypads and Interfaces			
Input/Output	🛨 Satellite			
	E Cable TV			
UPS	DVD Player			
	DVD Changer			
Event Mapper	Eliving Room: Settings			
	🛨 📕 Interface Templates		Annaha	
Content	Interface Groups	C	Арру	

Exercise 5: Configure the Zones

Overview Before beginning this exercise, be sure you have completed the previous exercises of this lesson. In this exercise, you will set up the Zone Names and Settings pages for the Receiver, and remove unused zones from the Viewer interface.

Giving the zones user-friendly names, such as "Theater" for our sample house, provides the user with an intuitive interface for controlling the audio in their home. Remove unused zone controls from the viewer interface to prevent confusion on the part of the homeowner, and to prevent them from turning on a zone to which no speakers are connected.

The optional settings interface gives the user access to less commonly used functions, such as bass, treble, and Listening Modes.

Note: On some surround sound receivers, the Settings interface will give the user access to various listening modes. See the *Integration Notes* for the specific receiver for details.

- How-to
 1. In the Configurator, Media tab, click the plus (+) sign to expand the Zone List for the Sunfire TGR-401, TGP-401 receiver added in Exercise 2.
 - 2. Click on **Main Zone** in the zone list. *The properties for Main Zone will display on the right.*
 - 3. Change the name to **Theater** in the Name field, then click **Apply**. *The label of the zone will change in the Zone List to reflect the new name.*
 - 4. Right-click the Theater zone in the system tree and select Create Settings Page for this zone. A new entry will be added under Keypads and Interfaces called Theater: Settings, and the Settings Interface field in the Zone Properties window will change to show that the Theater: Settings interface is assigned to this zone. Your screen should now look like the image below.

📕 g!Demo∶Conf	igurator	275						- 🗆 ×
System	AM/FM Tuner 2 E Sunfire TGR/TGP-401 Internal DVD Players	ÂM	Audio Zone:	Theat	ter		1	
Interface	🖉 🖉 Integra DPC-7.4,7.5,8.5 (RS-2	32)	Name		Theater			
	🖃 🔲 Video Displays		System #		4183			
Security	Projector		Universal Rece	iver	< NONE	>		
Climate	Keypad Controllers		Settings Interfa Display	ce	Theater: < NONE	Settings >		•
Lighting	ELAN S8.6 AV (6 Zones)	ſ	Slave Zone Auxiliary Sourc	e Funct	< NONE	>		•
Media	🛨 🌒 Zones 🖃 🎟 Elan V85 (8 Zones)		Input Name	Displa	y On/Off	Display Input	Slave Source	
Messaging			SAT					
Video	E Sunfire TGR-401, TGP-401		MP3 DVD (DVD C					
Irrigation	🦳 🕻 Zones	Þ	CABLE (Cabl.					\cup
Pool Control	€ Zone 2 E Keypads and Interfaces Satellite		Source Display	Name	From Zo DVD C	ne hanger	Show Source Yes	
Input/Output			Cable TV AM/FM Tuner		Cable 1 Sunfire	TV TGR/TGP-40	Yes . Yes	
UPS	∃ DVD Changer ∃ Living Room: Settings							
Event Mapper				voolv				
Content	Interface Groups							

- 5. In the System Tree under **Keypads and Interfaces**, **Theater: Settings**, click on the plus (+) sign to the left of the name to expand the list.
 - a. Select the **800x600 Layout (Touchscreen)** to display a representation of the settings page for this zone.



Note: The Settings page will auto-populate different controls depending on what commands are supported by the receiver.

b. Select the top object in the Interface Layout, labeled "Bass". *The control will be highlighted in yellow and the Audio Sound Adjust Properties window opens.*

Note: In the Viewer, this object appears as a Bass tone control slider, allowing the user to increase or decrease the bass in the zone.

- c. Verify the following properties in the Audio Sound Adjust window:
 - The Name field is "Bass". This corresponds to the label on the control.
 - The Style drop-down is set to Bass Control.
 - The **Connect To** drop-down is set to **Theater**, indicating that this is the zone the slider controls.

Audio Soun	d Adjust Properties		×
Name	Bass		Picture
Text Color		Select Color	Use Default
Face Color		Select Color	. 🔽 Use Default
🗖 Transpa	rent (Requires Backgro	und Texture)	
Radius			Static
Shading	Ī		Static
Shading			Static
Style	Bass Control 💌	Border	7
Text Size	20 pt 💌	Align	V
Text Quality	_	Funct.	V
Connect To	Theater		•

Note: The Settings page is fully customizable and any of the objects on this page can be moved and resized so that other controls can be added.

- 6. To remove the unused zones from the Viewer interface, go to the **Interface** tab in the Configurator.
- 7. Under Touch Screen Options near the top of the System Tree, click the plus
 (+) sign to the left of the Windows option to expand the list:
 - a. Under the heading **Tab Layouts**, select **Media System** to view the following screen:

glDemo : Coni	igurator			_ 🗆 🗵
System	Interface	Tab Layout Windows: M	ledia System	
Interface	Interface Devices Touch Screen Options	Default Tab Navigate By Group	< SELECT : No	× •
Security	Original Scheme	Navigate to Default Page First	No	•
Climate	User Interface	Enable Page Swipe	No	
Lighting	Tab Config: Security System	Available Tabs		Visible Tabs
Media	Tab Config: Media System	Zone 3		Living Room
Messaging	Tab Config: Messaging Stab Config: Irrigation System Tab Config: Video System	Zone 5	Add Tab >>	Theater
Video	Tab Config: Pool Control Home Pages	Living Room Video	< Remove Tab	2016 2
		V8 Output 3 V8 Output 4	Move Up	
Pool Control		V8 Output 5 V8 Output 6	Move Down	
	Display Settings	V8 Output 7 V8 Output 8		
Event Manner	System Images			
Content	U System Sounds	Apply		
)

- b. The properties window is divided into two columns, Available Tabs and Visible Tabs. Items listed under Visible Tabs are available for interaction in the Viewer software. Because we are not using Zone 2 on the Sunfire receiver, we need to remove it from the Viewer.
- c. In the **Visible Tabs** column, click on **Zone 2**, click the **Remove Tab** button in the center, and then click **Apply**. *Zone 2 will move from the Visible Tabs column to the Available Tabs column.*



Note: This step simply removes the zone from the Viewer software on a per-screen basis, it is not deleted and can be added back into the viewer at any time should the homeowner decide to expand their system. Each touch screen must be configured separately.

Exercise 6: Add the Display

Overview In this exercise, you will add a Display with a two-way driver to the Configurator.

In the g! software displays are set up independently in the Configurator, and then assigned to a zone. For displays with two-way drivers, the g! software has preconfigured the commands.

- How-To
 1. In the Configurator, on the Media tab, right-click Communication Devices in the System Tree and select "Add New Communication Device". The Add New Communication Device window opens.
 - a. Change the name of the device to Theater TV.
 - b. Set the **Type** to **Serial Port** and the **Communication Type** to **Standard Connection**, then click **OK**.

Device Name	Theater TV	
Туре	Serial Port	•
Device [¥
Communication Type	Standard Connection	•

- 2. Right-click Video Displays in the System Tree, and select Add New Video Display. *The Add New Video Display window opens.*
- 3. Select **Panasonic TH Series** from the list of supported displays and click **OK**. A Panasonic TH Series Video Display will be added to the System Tree, and the Properties window for the device will open.
- 4. Change the **Name** field in the properties window to **Theater TV**.
- 5. Select **Theater TV** from the **Communication Device** drop-down list, then click **Apply**. *The name of the display will change in the System Tree.*

glDemo : Conf	figurator		22		_ 🗆 ×
System	Communication Devices	F	Video Display : The	eater TV	
Interface	□ \$2DVD □ \$28.6		Name	Theater TV	
			System #	4253	
Security	🗌 🗺 Theater TV		Device Type	Panasonic TH Series	
Climate	MP3 Players Internal Player	1	Communication Device	Theater TV	
Lighting	No Audio Services		On Off Control Type	Discrete Verify (Always Send)	•
-3 3	AM/FM Tuner 1		Source Control Type	Discrete Verify (Always Send)	-
Media	🗌 📼 AM/FM Tuner 2		Delay After On/Off	100 msec	•
	📼 Sunfire TGR/TGP-401 Internal	AM	Delay After Source	100 msec	-
Messaging	DVD Players		Controller Commands		_
Video	 Video Displays IR Display Projector 	32)	Up Power On Power Off		
Pool Control	Heater TV Keypad Controllers Audio Zone Controllers		Slot 1 Slot 2 Slot 3		
Input/Output	ELAN S8.6 AV (6 Zones)		PC		
UPS	H () Zones Elan V85 (8 Zones)		Add Input	Delete input	
Event Mapper					
Content	Sources		Apply		

6. Your screen should now look like below.

Exercise 7: Assign a Display to a Zone

Overview In this exercise, you will set up the Theater zone to use a display. Before beginning, be sure that you have completed the previous exercises from this lesson.

Assigning a display to a zone provides the ability to send power and input commands to the display based on which source is selected.

How-To

- 1. In the Configurator, on the Media tab System Tree, click the plus (+) sign to expand the zone list for the Sunfire TGR-401, TGP-401 receiver.
 - 2. Click **Theater** in the Zones list. *The Theater zone properties display in the window to the right.*
 - 3. From the **Display** drop-down list, select the **Theater TV** and click **Apply**. *The Auxiliary source functions box will change to reflect the available display commands for each source*.

	AM/I M Tuner 1	N				
System	AM/FM Tuner 2	Audio Zone: Thea	ter			
Internet internet	Sunfire TGR/TGP-401 Internal AV	Name	Theater			
intenace	Integra DPC-7 4 7 5 8 5 (RS-212)	System #	4193			
Security	Video Displays	Universal Decement	< NONE >			
	R Display		- NUME -			10
Climate	Projector	Settings Interface	Theater Settings			
	🔄 🗰 Theater TV	Display	Theater TV			
Lighting	Keypad Controllers	Slave Zone	< NONE >			
	E Audio Zone Controllers	Auxiliary Source Func	Projector			
Media	ELAN S8.6 AV (6 Zones)	Input Name [Theater TV			
	E Sources	HD/BD	Don't Change	Don't Change		
Messaging	1 S Zones	SAT	Don't Change	Don't Change		
	E Cian Vob (o zones)	DVR	Don't Change	Don't Change		
Video	A Zamar	MP3	Don't Change	Don't Change		
	Sunfra TGP-401 TGP-401	DVD (DVD Changer)	Don't Change	Don't Change		
Irrigation	E Sources	CABLE (Cable TV)	Don't Change	Don't Change		
	C Cones	VCR	Don't Change	Don't Change		
Pool Control	1 C Theater	CD	Don't Change	Don't Change		\sim
	C 0 Zone 2	HD/BD-7.1	Don't Change	Don't Change		
Input/Output	E Keypads and Interfaces	Zone Sources	LIGHT L Nanne	Linot Channe		~
		Source Dicolay Name	Erom Zona		Show Source	
UPS	Cable TV	DVD Channer	DVD Cha	naer	Vas	
	DVD Player	Cable TV	Cable TV		Yes	
Event Mapper	ET DVD Changer	AM/FM Tuner	Sunfire T	GR/TGP-401 Inter.	Yes	
	Living Room: Settings Theater: Settings					
Content	Interface Templater					
	Interface Groups					
Floor Plan	Tal Cantenace Croups					
		a	×.			
		Apply				

Quick Reference	Quick Reference: Auxiliary Source Functions				
Input Name	The name of the Input on the receiver. This is followed with the assigned source in parentheses.				
Display On/Off	Determines the state of the display for each source. Default setting is "Don't Change", indicating that the g! software will not send a command to the display and leave it in its current state. Setting this value to "Turn On" will send the "On" command to the display when the source is selected. Setting it to "Turn Off" will send the "Off" command.				
Display Input	Determines which input the Display should be set to for each given source. Default setting is "Don't Change", indicating that the g! software will not send an input change command to the display. Other options in this field are based on the type of display used, and may include options such as "Input 1" or "Component". Select the option that is most suited to your application.				
Slave Source	Used in conjunction with a Slave Zone and defines the slave zone behavior based on the active source.				

- 4. For this example, we will assume that the Receiver is acting as a video switcher and that there is a single video connection from the receiver to the connection "Slot 1" in the display. For each source, we need to specify the displays power state and which input the display should use.
 - a. In the Auxiliary Source Functions box, configure the display settings for the input named **CABLE (Cable TV)**. As this source is for a Cable box, the display for the zone should be turned on when this source is selected.
 - b. Right-click **Don't Change** in the **Display On/Off** column directly to the right of the Input Name, Cable TV. *A popup window will appear showing your options:*

Display	Theater TV		
Slave Zone	< NONE >		
Auxiliary Source Func	ions		
Input Name HD/BD SAT DVR MP3 DVD (DVD Changer) CABLE (Cable TV) VCR CD HD/BD-7.1 SIRIUS TUNER (Sunfire TGR FRONT	Display Dont (Dont (Dont (Dont (Turn C Dont (Dont (Dont (TGP-401 Inter Dont (Dont (v On/Off Change Change Change Change Change Change Change Change Change Change Change Change	Display Input Don't Change Don't Change

- c. Select "**Turn On**" for this source. *The entry in the Display On/Off column will update to reflect your choice.*
- d. Set the input by right-clicking in the Display Input column directly to the right of the Cable TV to display the choices. Select **Slot 1**.
- e. Repeat the steps above to set the **DVD (DVD Changer)** to **Turn On** and select **Slot 1** input. Your screen should now look like below.

Display	Theater TV			
Slave Zone	< NONE >			
Auxiliary Source Fur	nctions			
Input Name	Display On/Off	Display Input		
HD/BD	Don't Change	Don't Change		
SAT	Don't Change	Don't Change		
DVR	Don't Change	Don't Change		
MP3	Don't Change	Don't Change		
DVD (DVD Change	r) Turn On	Slot 1		
CABLE (Cable TV)	Turn On	Slot 1		
VCR	Don't Change	Don't Change		
CD	Don't Change	Don't Change		
HD/BD-7.1	Don't Change	Don't Change		
SIRIUS	Don't Change	Don't Change		
TUNER (Sunfire TG	R/TGP-401 Inter Don't Change	Don't Change		
FRONT	Don't Change	Don't Change		

 Scroll down the list of sources if necessary to locate TUNER (Sunfire TGR/TGP-401). As this is an audio only source, we need to turn off the display when it is selected. Right click Don't Change in the Display On/Off column and select Turn Off from the popup menu.

	Don't Change	Don't Change
SIRIUS	Don't Change	Don't Change
TUNER (Sunfire TGR/TGP-401 Inter	Turn Off	Don't Change
FRONT	Don't Change	Don't Change

Exercise 8: Check the Viewer Interface

Overview In this exercise, you will check your work in the Viewer. Before beginning, be sure you have completed all of the previous exercises in this lesson.

In addition to the Viewer, you will use the "Show Virtual Display" feature in the Configurator. This tool shows the expected power and source state for a display configured in the software.

How-To 1. In the Configurator, select the Media tab. Right-click the **Theater TV Display** and select **Show Virtual Display**. *The Theater TV Virtual Display Window will open:*

Theater TV	On
Source 1	
Source 2	
Source 3	
Source 4	

2. In the upper right corner of the Configurator window, click the **Restore Down** button to take the Configurator out of full screen mode:



- 3. Launch a second instance of g!Connect Pro.
- 4. From the g!Connect Pro main screen, click **Start Viewer**. *The Viewer interface displays the Homepage.*
- 5. Click **g!** In the upper left to access the main system menu, then select the Media icon.
- 6. Click the **Theater** icon to access the Theater zone user interface.

7. Arrange the windows on your desktop so that you can see both the Viewer and the Virtual Display window as shown below.



On this screen notice:

- The Sources are listed at the right
- The Source Name and Icon match the ones chosen in the previous exercises.
- The Theater zone is off and the Theater TV is off.

- 8. Select the **Cable TV** source. Notice the following:
 - The Virtual Display window indicates that the display has turned on and selected Slot 1.
 - The interface changes to provide the controls configured in previous lessons for the Cable TV.
 - The zone's active source icon and name in the upper right has changed to reflect the source selected in the zone.

Theater TV	gl glDemo	
Off On	g! 💿 🧹 Theater 💽 Cabl	le TV
Source 1 Source 2 Source 3	MAIN DVR	POWER
Source 4	NEWS KIDS LOCAL NETWORK PREMIUM SPORTS MUSIC LEARNING	SOURCE
	Kenter GSPAN	دیک ettings
	Guide Menu 1 2 3 Page Select 7 8 9 Channel	∆ /olume ▽
	Exit Info Last 0 Enter	

9. Click the **Source** button and select the **Sunfire TGR/TGP-401 Internal Tuner** source. The Virtual Display window indicates that the display has turned off, and the built in AM/FM tuner interface is shown.

Theater TV 💌	g!Demo			
Off On	<u>g!</u> 💿	Theater	AM/FM	Tuner
Source 1 Source 2 Source 3	FAVORITES KEYPAD	87.7 FM	EXAMPLE AND BAND	POWER
Source 4				SOURCE
				्रि SETTINGS
				Δ
				XX MUTE

10. Click the **Settings** button in the lower right. *The settings interface will open, providing access to Bass, Treble, Listening Holography, and Dolby Headphone functionality.*



Notes:

Notes:

Lesson 11 Configuring Video



Overview

This lesson shows you how to configure IP video cameras and servers to provide live video to any connected Viewer.

You will:

- Learn how video cameras are organized in the Configurator.
- Use the Configurator to set up video cameras.
- Check the Viewer interface to confirm proper configuration.
- Understand the various features available in the Viewer.

Sample House

Our sample house will be configured with two video cameras:

- Backyard: Pan/Tilt IP camera
- Front Door: Analog camera connected to the g! software with an IP Video Server

Requirements

• A PC running g!Demo and g!Connect Pro.

-or-

• ELAN Controller and g!Connect Pro.

Video Overview

Overview The following diagram shows two video sources in a basic system schematically. The diagram includes the components that are important to the ELAN controller.



A note about Video Application Licensing:

Included Video Functionality: supports up to two IP Cameras or two video streams from an analog video server. Does not support DVR functionality.

Video PRO App: supports up to 16 IP Video cameras and up to 4 Video Servers and supports DVR functionality for video recording.

Terms The following terms are used in the **Configurator**:

- **Communication Device**: Most video devices do not require a communication device, but in a few cases they will. Refer to the video devices integration note for details:
 - IP cameras do not require a communication device, the communication information is contained within the Video Camera setup in the Configurator.
 - Some video servers do require a communication device. In this case the network communication information is configured in the communication device. Check the video server integration note for details.
- Video Camera/Source: This is the camera/source itself. It can be an IPbased network camera or an input port on a video server.

How-to To integrate video cameras:

- Add the Communication Device (if applicable)
- Add the Video Cameras

Exercise 1: Add a Single IP-Based Network Camera

Overview In the following steps you will add a Panasonic BL-C10A IP-based network camera. IP cameras do not require a communication device, you will only need to add the camera and enter the required information for communication over the network.

How-to **Note:** All IP cameras must be configured properly prior to integrating with the g! software. Refer to the *Integration Note* for the specific camera used for required camera setup steps.

1. In the **Configurator**, click the **Video** tab, then right-click **Video Cameras/Sources** in the System Tree, as shown below.



- 2. Click Add New Video Source/Camera.... The Add New Video Source/Camera window opens.
- 3. Select **Panasonic BL-C10A** from the Device Type list. Name the camera "Back Yard", then click **OK**.

dd New Video Source/	Camera	
Name Back Yard		
Device Type		
AvioSys 90601		
AvioSys 9060SL		1
AvioSys Video Port		
AXIS 214PTZ		
AXIS 216FD		
AXIS 240Q/241Q Port		
Darim NetGator		
Darim NetGator B&W		
HomeLogic Video Sou	irce	
Panasonic (Auto-Dete	ct)	
Panasonic BB-HCM31	1A	
Panasonic BB-HCM33	1A	
Panasonic BB-HCM38	1A	
Panasonic BL-C10A		-
I= · -· -···		
and En British	O an a st	
Search For Devices	Cancel	UK

- 4. Select the Back Yard camera in the System Tree and enter the following required information for communication in the properties window:
 - a. Enter the camera's IP address.
 - b. Enter the camera login username and password. (if required)

Note: If you are using the g!Demo you can leave this information blank.

glDemo:Con	figurator		X
System	☐ ♥ Video System ☐ ♥ Global Options	Video Source/Camer	ra : Back Yard
Interface	Communication Devices	Name	Back Yard
	Uldeo Cameras/Sources	System #	7126
Security	Video Camera Controllers	Device Type	Panasonic BL-C10A
22 2	🗌 📑 Custom Tabs	IP Address	192 . 168 . 0 . 80
Climate		Port	80
Lighting		UserName	Administrator
5 5		Password	password
Media		Enable DVR	No
		Low-Res Panning	No
lviessaging		Flip Image 180	No
Video		Hide Resolution Control	No
		Hide Full Screen Control	No
Irrigation		Default Resolution	Auto
Deal Control		Goto Preset when Idle	< NONE >
Pool Control		Record Resolution	< DONT CHANGE >
Input/Output		Record Mode	Auto (Medium Sensitivity)
		Record Tolerance	0% (Keep All Frames)
UPS			
Event Manner			
Livent wapper		Apple	
Content		Арріу	
)

Exercise 2: Add an Analog Video Camera

- *Overview* In the following steps you will configure an AvioSys IP Video Server. This video server has four analog video inputs to convert video from up to four analog video sources to be viewed on the Viewer interface. You will first add a communication device and then add one port (video input) on the video server that the g! software will use to display the video.
- *How-to* **Note:** All IP video servers must be configured properly prior to integrating with the g! software. Refer to the *Integration Note* for the specific video server used for required server setup steps.
 - 1. Add the video server communication device.
 - a. On the Video tab, select Communication Devices. Right-click and select Add New Communication Device. The Add New Communication Device window opens.
 - b. Select Ethernet as the Type.
 - c. Select AvioSys IP Video 9100B as the Communication Type.

🝠 g!Demo : Coni	igurator	. D ×
System	☐ ¶i Video System	
Interface	Communication Devices Video Cameras/Sources	
Security	Use Controllers	
Climate	Custom labs	
Lighting	Add New Communication Device	
Media	Device Name Video Server	
Messaging	Type Ethernet	
Video	Device	
Irrigation	Communication Type AvioSys IP Video 9100B	
Pool Control	Cancel	
Input/Output		
UPS		
Event Mapper		
Content		

d. Name the device "Video Server" then click OK.

- 2. Enter the required information for communication. Click on the **Video Server** communication device in the system tree and enter the following information:
 - a. Enter the video server's IP address.
 - b. Enter the camera login username and password. (if required)

Note: If you are using the g! Demo you can leave this information blank.

System	Video System	Communication D	evice: Video Server
Interface Security Climate Lighting Media Messaging Video Irrigation Pool Control Input/Output	Consumication Devices Communication Devices Communication Devices Communication Devices Communication Devices Video Server Video Cameras/Sources Video Cameras/Controllers Coustom Tabs	Name System # Device Type Location Enable Sharing Sharing Port IP Address Port	Video Servar 7138 Ethernet / AvioSys IP Video 91008 • SELECT > No 0 192 168 80

- 3. Add the video server port:
 - a. On the Video tab right-click Add New Video Cameras/Sources on the system tree. The Add New Video Source/Camera window opens.
 - b. Select AvioSys Video Port from the list
 - c. Set the name to "Front Door" and click OK.



- 4. Edit the properties for the video source:
 - a. Click on the Front Door camera in the system tree to view the camera properties window.
 - b. Confirm the Communication Device is set to Video Server,
 - c. Set the **Video Source** to **1**. This defines the input port on the server to which the video is connected.
 - d. Click **Apply** at the bottom of the screen.

g! g!Demo : Configurator					
System	Video System Global Options	Video Source/Camer	a : Front Door		
Interface	Communication Devices	Name	Front Door		
	Video Server	System #	7139		
Security	Back Yard	Device Type	AvioSys Video Port		
01	📃 💐 Front Door	Communication Device	Video Server	•	
Climate	Video Camera Controllers	Video Source	1	•	
Lighting		Settings	Disable Audio	•	
<u> </u>		Enable DVR	No	-	
Media		Controller	< SELECT >	-	
		Flip Image 180	No	•	
wessaging		Hide Resolution Control	No	•	
Video		Hide Full Screen Control	No	*	
		Default Resolution	Auto	•	
Irrigation		Record Resolution	< DONT CHANGE >	•	
Real Cantrol		Record Mode	Auto (Medium Sensitivity)	•	
		Record Tolerance	0% (Keep All Frames)	¥	
Input/Output					
100 000 100 00 00 00					
UPS					
Event Mapper					
Linuppor		Apply			
Content		Je nev			

Exercise 3: Check the Viewer Interface

- *How-To* Once you have configured the two video cameras, check the Viewer to confirm your work.
 - 1. From the g! Connect main screen, click **Start Viewer**.
 - Click g! in the upper left to access the main system icons, then click the Video icon to access the available video streams. You will see two icons; one for each camera. Select each one and notice the differences.





- For cameras with Pan / Tilt capability, you can click anywhere in the video image to re-center the camera view on that spot.
- For cameras with zoom, +/- buttons display to allow you to zoom in or out.
- For cameras with audio, icons display at the bottom right for control of the audio volume level.
- For cameras that allow Presets, a series of numbered Preset buttons are displayed. To save a new preset move the camera to the desired new location, press and hold the preset # to save the new view.

Sample screenshot from an IP camera that supports Pan, Tilt, Zoom, Presets and Audio:



Notes:

Lesson 12 Event Mapper

8!

Overview

The Event Mapper is the area of the Configurator where advanced custom programming is performed. It allows you to execute commands in response to events detected by the system.

For example, when the front door to a home is opened, the front-hallway light is turned on. In this example, the event is the front door opening, and the command mapped to that event is "turn on the light".

You will:

- Learn how custom events and macros are organized in the Configurator.
- Create Event Maps in response to sample system events.

Requirements

• A PC running g!Demo and g!Connect Pro.

-or-

- ELAN Controller and g!Connect Pro.
- Completion of Lesson 3, *Configuring Security Systems*.

Event Mapper Overview

Overview Event Maps contain three distinct categories:

Events. An Event is something that has happened in the system and could come from any configured sub-system. Events are used to trigger Event Maps. These can be equated to "IF" statements. Multiple Events in this window will trigger as "OR".

Conditions. Conditions are tests that allow control over when an Event should cause something to happen. Conditions place limits on when an Event Map should execute; as the Event *plus* the Condition must be met. These can be equated to "AND" statements. Multiple Conditions must ALL be met to trigger the Event Map and execute the commands.

Commands. Commands are the steps that are taken in response to a particular Event. These can be equated to THEN statements. Multiple Commands will execute in sequence.

Examples of each are shown below.


How-to Setting up an Event Map consists of the following steps:

- 1. Add the Event Map
- 2. Set the events that should trigger the Event Map
- 3. Add conditions to control if or when the Event Map runs (if needed)
- 4. Set the commands to execute when the Event Map runs

Event Maps can be generated by entering the Event Mapper tab in Configurator, adding a new Event Map and then selecting the appropriate event (triggers), conditions and commands. This is the method detailed in the following exercises.

Event Maps can also be created on sub-systems tabs by right-clicking on a subsystem component and using the *Create Event Map for...* option, which will create a new event map with the selected trigger event already populated.



Example:

A NoteThe following exercises are intended to demonstrate the concepts of Eventabout thisMapper, and are not in any way comprehensive of the possibilities available within
the Event Mapper function.

You should use these exercises and topics merely as a starting point for creating your own custom event maps.

Exercise 1: Arm the Security System on Away House Mode

Overview In this exercise, you will use Event Mapper to add additional functionality to a System Mode. System Modes will automatically tie into scheduling features on tabs such as Climate and Lighting, but through Event Maps additional functions can be added. Our sample function will be to automatically arm our Virtual Security System when the Away System Mode is selected.

Note: The alarm system <u>cannot</u> be automatically disarmed from a system mode or any other system command: the g! software does not support auto-disarm features as they could present a security risk.

How-to

 Click the Event Mapper tab in the Configurator, then right-click Event Maps and Add New Event Map in the System Tree.



2. Name the Event Map Away Mode, and then click OK. The Away Mode properties window displays to the right.

🛃 g!Demo : Coi	nfigurator					
System	top System Second System Second System	Event Map: Away Mode				
Interface	Event Maps State of the second sec	Name System #		Away Mode 7164		
Security	Repeating System Timers	Events				
Climate	Timed Events	Sub-System	Туре	Family	Sys i Add	
Lighting					Remove	
Media						
		Conditions				
Messaging		Sub-System	Туре	Family Sys	State	
Video					Add	
Irrigation					Remove	
Pool Control		Commands				
		Sub-System	Туре	Family	Sys : Add	
Input/Output					Descent	
UPS					Remove	
					Iviove Up	
Event Mapper					Move Down	
		Apply		Test Comm	ands Now	
Content)	

- 3. To the right of the **Events** section (top section), click the **Add** button. *The Add Event window opens.*
 - a. Select General System in the System Family section.
 - b. Select System Notifications in the Event Groups section.
 - c. Select Away in the Available Events section.



- d. Click **OK.** The Add Event window closes and the event displays in the properties window.
- 4. To the right of the **Commands** section (bottom section), click the **Add** button. *The Add Command window opens*.
 - a. Select Security System in the System Family section.
 - b. Select House in the Event Groups section.
 - c. Select Auto Arm in Away Mode in the Available Events section.



d. Click **OK**. The Add Command window closes and the command displays in the properties window.

<i>ទ្ធl</i> g!Demo : Conf	igurator					_ 🗆 ×
System	Event Map System	Event Map: Away	Mode			
Interface	Event Maps	Name System #	Away Mode 7164			
Security	Run-Once System Timers Repeating System Timers	Events				
Climate	Timed Events	Sub-System System Notifications	Type Away	Family General System	Sys # 1004	Add
Lighting						Remove
Media		Conditions				
Messaging		Sub-System	Туре	Family	Sys # Sta	
Video						Add
Irrigation						Remove
Pool Control		Commands				
Input/Output		Sub-System House	Type Auto Arm in Away Mode	Family Security System	Sys # 1 2675	Add
UPS						Move Up
Event Mapper						Move Down
Content		Apply	Test Cor	mmands Now		

e. Your screen should now look like the one below.

Exercise 2: Set Home Mode on Security Disarm

Overview In this exercise, you will set up an Event Map to have the system automatically set the g! software System Mode to Home when the security system is disarmed.

How-to

1. On the Event Mapper tab, right-click Event Maps, then Add New Event Map... The Event Map window opens.



- 2. Name the Event Map **Home Mode**, then click **OK**. *The Home Mode* properties window displays to the right.
- 3. To the right of the **Events** section (top), click the **Add** button. *The Add Event window opens.*
 - a. Select Security System in the System Family section.
 - b. Select House in the Event Groups section.
 - c. Select Disarm in the Available Events section.

Add Event		×
System Family	Event Groups	
Audio Zone Controller Climate System Display DVD Player DVR Generic Serial Device Input/Output Inputs IR Sender Irrigation System Keypad Controller Lighting System Media System Media System Media System Media System Tuner Video Controller Video Controller Video Controller Video System	1st Floor Motion Back Door Front Door Garage Garage Door House Side Entrance Available Events Armed in Any Mode Armed in Away Mode Armed in Stay Mode Armed in Unknown Mode Burglar Alarm Disarm Entry Delay Exit Delay	Cancel

- d. Click **OK.** The Add Event window closes and the event displays in the properties window.
- 4. To the right of the **Commands** section (bottom), click the **Add** button. *The Add Command window opens*.
 - a. Select General System in the System Family section.
 - b. Select General System in the Event Groups section.
 - c. Select Switch to Home Mode in the Available Events section.

Add Command		×
System Family	Command Groups	
Audio Zone Controller Climate System Display DVD Player DVR General System Generic Serial Device Input/Output Inputs IB Sondor	Client: Default Client: Windows General System Run-Once System Timer	
Irrigation System Keypad Controller	Available Commands All Clients Jump To Home Page	•
Media System Messaging	Delay Execution Switch to Away Mode Switch to Home Mode	
Outputs Pool Control Power Supply Security System	Switch to System Mode 10 Mode Switch to System Mode 4 Mode Switch to System Mode 5 Mode Switch to System Mode 6 Mode	- -
Video Controller Video System	Dawnal to avalett notice to notice	
	Cancel	

- d. Click **OK**. The Add Command window closes and the command displays in the properties window.
- e. Your screen should now look like below.

System System Event Map System Event Map: Home Mode	
Interface Name Home Mode	
System # 7165	
Security Do Run-Once System Timers Events	
Climate GRepeating System Timers Sub-System Type Family System Climate Disarm Security System 2683	Add
Lighting	Remove
Media	
Conditions	
Video	Add
Irrigation	Remove
Pool Control Commands	
Sub-System Type Family System Type Family System	# Add
General System Switch to Home mode General System 1003	Remove
UPS	Move Up
Event Mapper	Move Down
Apply Test Commands Now	

Exercise 3: Check the Commands

- *Overview* In the following steps you will use the **Event Map Trace Info** window to see your Event Maps in action. Event Map Trace can be useful when creating and testing Event Maps to see events happening in real-time and observe when they may be triggering an Event Map.
 - On the Event Mapper tab, right click Global Options near the top in the System Tree, and click Show Event Map Trace Info.



2. Switch over to the **Viewer**, and arrange the windows so that you can see both the Trace window and the Viewer on your screen at the same time.

<u>g!</u>		Hom	e						
	Forecast	V	A		Ma	rch 2	010		
Event Map Trace Info EVENT DETECTED: System Notifications -> Mod	le 3	×	Sun	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thr	Fri	Sat
EVENT DETECTED: System Notifications -> Aw EXECUTING EVENT MAP Away Mode ID 1551	ay			1	2	3	4	5	6
			7	8	9	10	11	12	13
			14	15	16	17	18	19	20
			21	22	23	24	25	26	27
			28	29	30	31			
		29, 2	2010 10:	Home Mode 3 18 AM				Away Mode	4
	Clear								

How-to

3. In the Viewer on the Home page, click the **Mode 3** button, then click **Away**.

In the **Event Map Trace Info** window you will now see several lines of text, each representing an event in the system, or an Event Map executing.

Note: An EVENT DETECTED message does not explicitly mean that it is going to trigger an Event Map; it is merely a notification of an event in the system which could *potentially* trigger an Event Map.

In the example above, we get an Event for Mode 3, which does not trip any Event Maps; and an event for the system mode changed to Away (System Notifications - > Away), which does trigger the Event Map "Away Mode".

Depending on what other configuration you have done in the system you may see several other events being detected during this test.

g!	Ŵ	House	ED STATUS	ЦЦЦ HISTORY
SUMMARY	ZONES	Armed		
Zone S	tatus			
				AWAY
		All Zones Ready		STAY
		nouly		
System	Faults		D	ISARM
		No System Faults		

4. Click **g**! to access the main system icons then click the **Security** icon. Notice the results of the Event Map "Away Mode": The House Partition of our Security Panel is now "Armed in Away Mode".

Venit Harp Trace Info 22 EVENT DETECTED House -> Daarm DXFC/TRACI (VIINT HARP House Model TO 1552)	g!	۲	House	C STATUS	لليل HISTORY
	SUMMARY	ZONCS	Ready to Arm		
	Zone Sta	itus			
				A	WAY
			All Zones Ready	5	STAY
Cear	System Faults				SARM
			No System Faults		

- 5. Test the Home Mode Event Map.
 - a. Tap the **Disarm** button, then enter **1...2...3...4...Enter** on the security keypad.
 - b. Notice that the Event Map trace displays Event Detected House
 -> Disarm, and this in turn causes the "Home Mode" Event Map to trigger.
- 6. Return to the Home page of the Viewer, and observe the results of the "Home Mode" Event Map. When you disarmed the House Partition, the System Mode was set to Home.



Exercise 4: Doorbell Triggers Jump to Video Tab

Overview In this exercise, you will use the chassis input on an ELAN System (such as the S8.6) to create a reaction to someone pressing the door bell, in this example, flipping all touch screens to a video feed. This example assumes that you have wired the door bell or a third party door station unit appropriately to the ELAN System Chassis Input and have already configured the ELAN System and a Video camera in the system.

How-to

- 1. Add a new Event Map and name it "Door Bell Video Flip" or similar.
- 2. Add an EVENT for the Chassis Input Shorted:
 - System Family: Inputs
 - Event Group: Chassis 1 Input 1
 - Event: Input Turned ON

Edit Command	×
System Family	Event Groups
Audio Zone Controller Climate System Display DVD Player DVR General System Generic Serial Device Input/Output Interface Device IR Sender Irrigation System Keypad Controller Lighting System Media System Media System Messaging Outputs Pool Control Power Supply Security System Tuner Video Controller Video System	Chassis 1 Audio Sense 1 Chassis 1 Audio Sense 2 Chassis 1 Audio Sense 3 Chassis 1 Audio Sense 4 Chassis 1 Audio Sense 5 Chassis 1 Audio Sense 7 Chassis 1 Audio Sense 8 Chassis 1 Input 1 Chassis 1 Input 2 Available Events Input Turned Off Input Turned On Cancel OK

- Add a command to flip touch screens to the video feed. Note that you may either flip all touch screens to the video feed(a), or select only specific screens (b).
 - a. Flip all touch screens to the video feed: Add a Command for the touch screens to flip to a certain video feed, by choosing Add Command and selecting System Family: Video System, Command Group: (desired camera feed), and Command: All Clients Jump to Tab. In the example below, an Aviosys Video Port will be displayed on all touch screens when the Input is turned on:

Edit Command		×
System Family	Command Groups	
Audio Zone Controller Climate System Display DVD Player DVR Generic Serial Device Input/Output Input/S Interface Device IR Sender Irrigation System Keypad Controller Lighting System IMedia System IMedia System IMedia System IMedia System IMedia System IMedia System Tuner Video Controller Video Controller Video Controller Video System	AvioSiys Video Port Panasonic BL-C10A Available Commands All Clients Jump To Tab Record Video at 1 Frame/Second Record Video at 2 Frames/Second Record Video at 2 Frames/Second Record Video at 2 Frames/Second Record Video at Full FrameRate Set Exclusive Mode Cancel	

b. Flip only a specific touch screen to the video feed: Add a Command for the touch screens to flip to a certain video feed, by choosing Add Command and selecting System Family: General System, Command Group: Client: (desired touch screen), and Command: Jump to Video Tab. In the example below, the front hall touch screen will jump to the Video Tab:

Add Command				×
System Family	Command Groups			
Audio Zone Controller Climate System Display DVD Player DVR General System Generic Serial Device Input/Output Inputs Interface Device IR Sender Irrigation System Keypad Controller Lighting System Messagning Outputs Pool Control Power Supply Security System Tuner Video Controller Video Controller Video System	Client Front Hall Client Kitchen General System Jump to Climate Page Jump to Home Page Jump to Home Page Jump to Home Page Jump to Media Page	Cancel	ОК	

AV Macro Examples

Overview You can use the Event Mapper to create macros to automate a variety of A/V functions. This section presents examples of some common macro functions.

Note: Use this section for examples and ideas, but bear in mind it is not a comprehensive list of possible functions.

PoweringThe following text uses the example of turning on a DVD Player, but the stepsOn abelow can be used with any Source Interface. Event Maps may also be used to turnSourceoff IR, Generic Serial, or sources with built-in drivers.

 In Configurator on the Media tab, right-click the DVD Player interface under Keypads and Interfaces and select Create Event Map For > Selected in One or More Zones.



 Add a command to send the Power On Serial Code to the DVD Player. Click Add next to the Commands box, then select System Family: Generic Serial Device. Scroll to the correct Serial Code and select Send Via Default Device.

Interfa	Edit Event M	Add Command	×		
	None DVD1	System Family	Command Groups		
Securi Climat	Events (ANY	Audio Zone Controller Climate System Display	DVD Player: Menu DVD Player: Open_Close DVD Player: Pause_Step DVD Player: Pause_Step DVD Player: Play		•
	DVD Player	DVD Player DVR	DVD Player: Play DVD Player: Plus 10	Add	
Lightin		General System Generic Serial Device	DVD Player Power On DVD Player Power On DVD Player Power Toggle	Remove	
Media	Conditions (#	Inputs Interface Device	DVD Player. Repeat		
Messa	Sub-System	IR Sender Irrigation System	Available Commands Send via Default Device	Add	
Video		Keypad Controller Lighting System Media System	Send via Device	Remove	
Irrigati	Commands (.	Messaging Outputs Pool Control		Add	
Pool C		Power Supply Security System	1	Remove	
Input/0		Video Controller Video System		Move Up	
UPS				Move Down	
Event	парроі ч	1	Cancel OK		

3. Whenever the DVD Player interface is selected, the g! software will automatically send an IR command to the DVD Player to Power ON.

Note: You may wish to also program a second Event Map to perform the inverse. Use the steps above to create an Event Map to Power Off the DVD Player when it is "not selected in any zones". React toBy using an IR receiver such as the Global Cache IRE, the g! software can triggerIR inputevents off the reception of specific IR codes.

for Event Map Triggering:

- 1. Add your IR Receiver as per its Integration Note.
- 2. Add an IR Device and learn the IR code(s) you wish to use to trigger the event. If possible, learn the IR through the same method IR will come in to trigger the event.
- 3. Edit the IR Device properties and set Decode IR from this device to Yes.

Input/Output Second Communication Devices	IR Device : IR Receiver		
 Input Controllers ■ Output Controllers 	Name System #	IR Receiver 2910	
	Default Sender	< SELECT >	•
IR Receiver	RC5 Codeset	No	•
IR Devices	Decode IR from this device	Yes	-
	Tuning Type	Cable (Type 1)	•
🖶 🎫 IR Receiver	Minimum Digits (0 Padding)	0	-
Numeric Triggers	Pre-Tune Command	< NONE >	-
Graph Objects	Post-Tune Command	< NONE >	-
Section HomeLogic Systems	Delay Between Commands	250 msec	•

4. Either right-click on the desired IR code and Add an Event Map for IR Code Begin Receive or go to the Event Mapper tab and add a new event with the trigger: System Family: Input/Output, the IR Device: IR Code, and IR Code Begin Receive.

Aumeric Triggers Graph Objects Backup Objects Client HomeLogic S	Systems	Add New IR Code Delete IR IN Create Event Map F Test Code Now Learn This Code Remove Repeats	ior IR Code Begin IR Code End R	Receive leceive
		-or-		
System Family Audio Zone Controller Climate System Display DVD Player DVD Player DVR General System General System Keypad Controller Lighting System Media System Media System Media System Media System Tuper Pool Control Power Supply Security System Tuper	Event Grou DVD IR: F DVD IR: F DVD IR: F DVD IR: S DVD IR: S DVD IR: S DVD IR: S DVD IR: S IR Code IR Code	IPS Power On Swind Night Sinp Back Sinp Forward Stop Subtlife Jp err, IRTN Wents Begin Receive End Receive		

5. Add commands to the event as desired.

Note: The above example theorizes a single IR code input to trigger a single event in the g! software, so it doesn't really matter whether you choose IR Code Begin Receive or IR Code End Receive. However, if you were to be inputting IR continuously, such as with a volume control or a light dimmer, Begin Receive allows you to set a Event Map when the button is *pressed*, and End Receive allows you to set a different event map for when the button is *released*.

- All Off: This exercise demonstrates how to use an event map to turn off multiple devices. In this example, you will turn off all audio sources whenever no zones are active on the zone controller.
 - 1. In Configurator, on the **Media** Tab, right-click on the name of the zone controller. Select **Create an Event Map For > All Zones Turned Off**.

Lighting	- Audio Zone Controlle	ers	
Media	ELAN S8.6 AV (6	Add New Audio Zone Controller Delete ELAN S8.6 AV (6 Zones)	
Messaging	E Keypads and Interfa	Replace ELAN S8.6 AV (6 Zones) with Download Current Settings	
	+ DVD Player	Create Event Map For	One or More Zones Turned On
Video	+ Cable		All Zones Turned Off

2. Add commands to turn off the various sources.

Ime ELAN System 12 (0 2018).Al			280
Events (ANY Event Specified can e	execute commands, if conditions are met)		
Sub-System	Туре	Family Sys#	
ELAN System12 (8 Zone)	All Zones Turned Off	Audio Zone Contr 4016	- A00
			Romou
			hientov
Conditions (ALL Conditions specifie	d must be met for Commande to Execute)		
	to must be met for commands to Execute)		_
Sub-System	Type	Family Sys # State	Add
Sub-System	Type ecute if Event occurs and Conditions are me Type	Family Sys# State	Add Remov
Sub-System Commands (ALL Commands will ex Sub-System 200 IB: Power Off	Type Type Send B via Default Device	Family Sys # State	Add Remov
Sub-System Commands (ALL Commands will ex Sub-System 3/D IR: Power Off Jan DTNR Alf/M Tuner	Type ecute if Event occurs and Conditions are me Type Send R via Default Device Tum Tuner Off	Family Sys # State	Add Remov
Sub-System Commands (ALL Commands will ex Sub-System 2VD IR: Power Off Jan DTNR AM/FM Tuner	Control of the for commands to Execute/	Family Sys # State	Add Remov
Sub-System Commands (ALL Commands will ex Sub-System 200 R: Power Off Ban DTNR AM/FM Tuner	Type Type Send IR via Default Device Turn Tuner Off	Family Sys # State	Add Remov
Sub-System Commands (ALL Commands will ex Sub-System Job R: Power Off Ban DTNR AM/FM Tuner	Type Type Send R via Default Device Turn Tuner Off	Family Sys # State	Add. Remov

AwayIn this example, you will use the Away System Mode to automatically turn off all A/VMode Allequipment.Off

1. Create a new Event Map and name it **Away Mode: A/V OFF** or something similar.

Note: If you have an existing Away Mode event map, you may wish to simply add commands to it rather than create a new event map.

2. Add an Event for system mode away. Select System Family: **General System**, Event Group: **System Notifications**, and Event: **Away Mode**.

Add Event		×
System Family	Event Groups	
Audio Zone Controller Climate System Display DVD Player DVR General System General System Irrigation System Keypad Controller Lighting System Media System Media System Messaging Outputs Pool Control Power Supply Security System Tuner Video Controller Video Controller Video System	Client: iPod Touch Client: Windows Client: X255 HomeLogic In-Wall Touch Screen Late Night Night Time Remote Login Attempt System Upgrade Notification Available Events Available Events Name Internet Connect Failure Internet Connect Failure Internet Connect Restore System Mode 10 System Mode 15 System Mode 5 System Mode 5	
Power Supply Security System Tuner Video Controller Video System	System Mode 5 System Mode 6 Cancel OF	•

3. Add commands to turn off appropriate A/V gear. For example, turn off the zone controller and the theater receiver. Also, power off individual sources and send a Stop command to the HL Internal Player. Note that we do not set separate commands for disabling displays, as this should be done automatically in your zone settings.

Event Map: Away Mode	e: AV Off			
Name	Away Mode: AV Off			
System #	3021			
Events				
Sub-System	Туре	Family	Sys #	
System Notifications	Away	General System	1004	Add
				\succ
				Demonstra
				Remove
Conditions				
Sub-System	Type	Family	Svs # State	
	.,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,			Add
				Remove
				\square
Commands				
Sub-System	Type Do Command All Zones Off	Family Audio Zone Controller	Sys #	Add
DVD: Power Off	Send IR via Default Device	IR Sender	2604	Remove
HomeLogic Internal Player	Player Stop	Media System	2933	
Main Zone	Turn Off	Audio Zone Controller	2972	Move Up
				Wove Down
Apply	Test Commands	Now		
		/		

GoodniteIn this example you will set up dim lighting and a soothing playlist to help young
children fall asleep, and set up a timer to turn the lights and the music off after a
certain amount of time.

- 1. Create a playlist in the **Viewer** for a compatible music source like the HL Internal Player.
- 2. Create a Run-Once System Timer on the **Event Map** tab in Configurator. Set the base time to an appropriate time interval.
- 3. Place a button control on a custom tab, settings page or home page to trigger the Event Map. (Optionally, you could also set this a System Mode)
- 4. Right-click the button and create an event map for button pressed.

Home	усжа
Mode 3 Add treir Control Add treir Control Deinte Control	Goodnite Kids
Copy Settings Show Properties Create Livert Map For 1	Dutton Press

5. Add commands to load the playlist, activate the correct source, set the volume, set the good nite scene, and start the Run-Once system timer.

Event Map: Goodnite Kids (DFF			
Name Good System # 3061 Events	nite Kids OFF		_]
Sub-System Nite Kids Conditions	Type Timer Expired	Family General System	Sys # 3046	dd 1ove
Sub-System Commands	Туре	Family Sys #	State At	id nove
Sub-System HomeLogic Internal Player Zone 1 Switch/Dimmer: Goodnite Scene Switch/Dimmer: Kids Nite-Lite Apply	Type Player Stop Turn Off Off On Test Commands Nov	Family Media System Audio Zone Controller Lighting System Lighting System	Sys # Au 2933 1880 Ref 3040 3029 Move	id 10ve e Up Down

6. On the **Event Mapper** tab in Configurator, add a new Event Map. Set the Event as the expiration of the run-once system timer, and then set commands to stop the playlist, dim the lights and turn off the audio zone after the desired amount of time.

Event Map: Goodnite Ki	ds OFF		
Name	Goodnite Kids OFF		
System # 3	3061	_	
Sub-System	Туре	Family	Sys #
Nite Kids	Timer Expired	General System	3046 Add Remove
Conditions			
Sub-System	Туре	Family Sy	s # State
			Add
Commands			
Sub-System HomeLogic Internal Player Zone 1 Switch/Dimmer: Goodnite S Switch/Dimmer: Kids Nite-Li	Type Player Stop Turn Off cene Off te On	Family Media System Audio Zone Control Lighting System Lighting System	Sys # Add 2933 ler 1880 3040 3029 Move Up Move Up
С Арріу	Test Comma	ands Now	

No TV In this example you will set up a time-based event map with conditions to thwart *after* teenagers who sneak up late to watch TV. *bedtime:*

 In the Event Mapper tab of Configurator, create a **Timed Event** and configure the time you wish to begin disabling the TV. Name it "Late Night" or something similar.

System Timer: Late Night			
Name	Late Night		
System #	3064		
Time Type	Clock		
Daily Start Time	12:00:00 AM		
Daily Start Time	3:00 Before		
Days to Execute	Monday Tuesday Wedne Thursday Friday Saturday Sunday		

 In the Event Mapper tab of Configurator, create a Run-Once System Timer. Set name as "Night Time" or something similar, and the base time as 21600 seconds (6 hours).

Note: Adjust time as needed.

System Timer: Night Time			
Name	Night Time		
System #	3066		
Base Time (Seconds)	21600.000		

- 3. Add a New Event Map and name it "No TV after bedtime: Begin" or something similar.
 - a. Add an Event from System Family: General System, and find the Timed Event you named "Late Night" or similar.

b. Add a Command from System Family: General System, and find the Run-Once System Timer you named "Night Time" or similar, and Start Timer at 6 hours.

Event Map: Late Night:Timed Event					
Name	No TV after Bedtime Beg	gin			
System #	3075				
Events					
Sub-System	Туре	Family	Sys #		
Late Night	Timed Event	General System	Add Remove		
Conditions					
Sub-System	Туре	Family Sy	s # State Add		
Commands					
Sub-System	Type	Family	Sys # Add		
Night Time	Start/Restart Timer : 6 Hour	rs, 0 Min,General System	3069 Remove Move Op Move Down		
Apply	大 Test Comm	nands Now			

- 4. Add a New Event Map and name it "No TV after bedtime: Enforcer" or something similar.
 - a. Add an Event from System Family: Display and choose your integrated display, and the event Display Activated (turned on).

Note: Optionally you can use the activation of an audio zone on an integrated receiver/zone controller instead.

- b. Add a Condition from System Family: General System and find your Night Time (run-once) Timer and choose the condition: *Timer Active*. This will cause the event to only trigger at night time when the 6 hour timer is running.
- c. Add a Command to turn the display off.

Event Map. No TV after Bedlime Enforcer					
Name	No TV after Bedtime	Enforcer			
System #	3119				
Events					
Sub-System LG Plasma/LCD Series	Type Display Activated	Family Display		Sys # 3077	Add
Conditions					\square
Sub-System	Туре	Family	Sys #	State	
Night Time	Timer Active	General System	3074	TRUE	Add
Commands					
Sub-System	Туре	Family		Sys #	Add
LG Plasma/LCD Series	Turn Display Off	Display		3082	Remove Move Up Wiove Down
Apply	Test Co	mmands Now			

The Event Maps above will set the system to automatically turn off the display if it is activated between the hours of 12am and 6am. The first event map starts a 6 hour run-once timer, which will count down from 6 hours to 0. The second event map watches for the TV in a certain zone to turn on, and then checks to see if the timer is currently running. If the timer IS running, it will send a command to turn off the TV. Once the timer expires at 6am, the TV will return to normal operation.

PartyIn this example, you will configure an additional System Mode to be used to set the
house for a party. In this event map, you will use the Whole House Music function
built into the Elan S-12 Zone Controller, but it is possible to also configure a similar
function by editing individual zones.

- 1. Add a New System Mode named Party Mode, and place a System Mode button on a Custom Tab or Home Page to activate the Event Map. Please see Lesson 13, *Interfaces: GUI and TS2* for details.
- 2. Configure Lighting and Climate scheduling information as desired.
- 3. Add a New Event Map and name it Party Mode or similar.
- 4. Add an Event from System Family: **General System**, Event Groups: **System Notifications**, and choose the **System Mode Party Mode**.

Add Event		×
System Family	Event Groups	
Audio Zone Controller Climate System Display DVD Player DVR General System Generic Serial Device Input/Output Inputs IR Sender Irrigation System Keypad Controller Lighting System Media System Messaging Outputs Pool Control Power Supply Security System Tuner Video Controller Video Controller	Client: Windows Client: Windows Client: X255 HomeLogic In-Wall Touch Screen Late Night Night Time Nite Kids Remote Login Attempt System Notifications System Upgrade Notification Available Events Away Home Internet Connect Failure Internet Connect Restore Party System Mode 10 System Mode 10 System Mode 4 JSvstem Mode 5 Cancel Of	

5. Add Commands as desired. For example, turn on the XM radio, select the XM Radio source, set volume on a particular zone, and then enable Whole House Music Mode for the S-12.

Commands				
Sub-System Elan XM-R3 Tuner Zone 1 Zone 1 Zone 1	Type Turn Tuner On Set Source to Source 02 Set Volume To 60 Set Option Whole House Mode On	Family Tuner Audio Zone Controller Audio Zone Controller Audio Zone Controller	Sys # 3125 1882 1878 1835	Add Remove Viove Up ove Down

Notes:

Notes:

Lesson 13 Interfaces: GUI and TS2

g!

Overview

This lesson discusses the main options available in the Configurator to customize colors and tab arrangements for in-wall touch screens, wireless tablets and other user interfaces in the system.

You will:

- Learn how to identify Interfaces in a system.
- Change basic settings for each interface and set which Tabs and Zones to show on which interfaces.
- Use built-in Display Settings.
- Use built-in Home Pages.
- Customize Home Pages.
- Add a Web Picture (such as weather radar).

Requirements

• A PC running g!Demo and g!Connect Pro.

-or-

• ELAN Controller and g!Connect Pro.

Overview

Overview This lesson explores many features available to customize the appearance of the Viewer on various interfaces.

In an ELAN system, interfaces include:

- In-Wall Touch Screens
- Wireless Tablets
- Computers in the home (on the local network)
- Computers connecting remotely (over the Internet)
- iPhone and iTouch

Terms **Touch Screen Options**: Settings container on the Interface tab which includes options for each interface that has connected to the ELAN Controller locally. Touch Screen Options include settings such as what systems are visible on the interface, display options, and power settings.

Display Settings: Display Settings contain options for the colors, textures, and sizes of items in a touch screen layout. These are also referred to as themes or skins. The g! default is BLACK with an optional BLACK HIVIS (High Visibility) for dimmer screens.

Home Page: Home Pages contain options much like a Custom Tab, with the ability to add a variety of controls such as system mode buttons and display information such as time, calendar, and weather. Included are 6 defaults home pages with various layout schemes.

Exercise 1: Identify and Name Individual Interfaces

OverviewEach touch screen, computer, or other interface that logs on to an ELAN controller
will automatically populate a Touch Screen Options entry on the Interface tab.
Each Touch Screen Option entry contains settings pertinent to that specific
Interface such as power settings and display options.

The first step to being able to manage the settings for a touch screen interface is to be able to manage the settings for the *correct* touch screen. In this lesson you will learn how to **identify** a touch screen and then **name** it so that it can be edited quickly and easily later on.

Touch Screen Option entries are added automatically for interfaces when those devices (touch screens, tablets, etc.) connect to the system for the first time. In other words, you don't have to add interfaces manually in the Configurator. Instead, connect the device to the system and power it up. Once it has connected to the ELAN Controller, a new heading will automatically appear in the Touch Screen Options list.

The g! software provides a default interface with the system. When a new device (touch screen, tablet, etc.) connects for the first time, the new Interface is created with settings *copied* from the **Default Interface**. For this reason, Default cannot be deleted. ELAN recommends that you DO NOT rename this item.

How-to In the following steps you will identify and name an interface.

- 1. Start the **Configurator**, and the **Viewer**. Arrange the windows on your monitor so you can see at least a part of the Viewer behind Configurator.
- 2. In the Configurator, go to the **Interface** tab. In the System Tree, under **Touch Screen Options**, select the **Default** interface.

System	Interface Scommunication Devices	TouchScreen: Default	
Interface	Interface Devices	Name	Default
		System #	0
Security	New Touchscreen	Platform	Undefined
	🕀 🔲 Windows	Format	TouchScreen 800x600
Climate	🛨 💻 Windows		ID This Touch Series
	🖃 🗉 Home Pages		
Lighting	🛨 🔳 HomeLogic Default 1		
	Ħ 🗉 HomeLogic Default 3		

3. Note the large **ID This Touch Screen** button in the properties window. Clicking this button will force the associated client Viewer to black out and display the text in the Name field as shown in the screen below.



4. Click through each entry clicking the **ID This Touchscreen** button until your view blacks out and displays the name. Once you have found the entry that is your PC, rename it to **MY PC**.



Exercise 2: Explore Interface Settings

Overview Each set of Touch Screen Options contains multiple headings that allow you to customize everything from what zones and interfaces appear on that particular touch screen, to altering screen saver, power management, and display settings.

Inside each set of Touch Screen Options:

- **Power Scheme-** Battery/AC Settings such as display off and screen saver timing.
- **User Interface-** Choose current Home Page, Display Settings, and whether schedules for climate are available on this interface.
- Advanced Settings- Toggle Browser tab, enroll in security announcements (if enabled in Security settings) and set volume. Also includes settings related to hardware graphics (typically should be left to defaults).
- **Tab Layouts-** Arrange what zones and interfaces should appear on this interface, and arrange the order of them (broken up by sub-system).

How-to

- 1. Navigate to the Interface tab and expand the Default interface.
- 2. Click on **Power Scheme (AC)**. These settings control interfaces that are plugged in, such as In-Wall Touch Screens, and tablets that are in the charging cradle.

System Interface	Communication Devices Interface Devices Interface Devices	AC Settings: Default	t	
Security	Touch Screen Options Default Power Scheme	Screen Saver Time Display Off Time	5 Minutes 20 Minutes	×
Climate	User Interface	Screen Saver Fade Screen Saver Random	No Yes	•
Lighting	 Tab Config: Security System Tab Config: Lighting System Tab Config: Media System 	Screen Saver Buttons Screen Saver Delay	Yes 5 Seconds	•
Media	Tab Config: Climate System	Battery Power Suspend Time	3 Hours	•
Messaging	Tab Config: Inigation System	Display Off Time	2 Minutes	•

Quick Reference: Power Scheme Fields

Screen Saver Time	Time before the display starts showing pictures.
Display Off Time	Time before the backlight is turned off when on AC Power (tap screen to wake).
Screen Saver Fade	Fade between pictures if on (hard transition if off).
Screen Saver Random	Show pictures in random order.
Screen Saver Buttons	Show the Next, Previous, Pause buttons on the picture screen saver.
Screen Saver Delay	Time between pictures.
Battery Power Suspend Time	Time before the display goes to sleep (requires touch of power button to wake).
Battery Power Display Off Time	Time before the backlight is turned off when using Battery Power. (Tap screen to wake)

3. Click User Interface.

User Interface: Default		
Home Page	Default 1	-
Display Settings (Day)	BLACK	-
Display Settings (Night)	BLACK	-
Hide HVAC Schedules	No	•

Quick Reference: User Interface fields

Home Page	Select which home page to show.
-	
Display Settings	Select which color settings to use for daytime and
(Day and Night)	which for Night time.
(= = ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ;	
	Don't show the climate scheduling page on this
Hide HVAC Schedules	interface

 Use the Tab Layouts:Tab Config to configure which tabs are shown on each interface. For example, click on Tab Config: Lighting System. Notice that Master and Theater are set to be displayed on the Default interface, and the Custom Tab is not shown.

System	Interface Second Communication Devices	Tab Layout Default: Lightir	ng System
Interface	Touch Screen Options	Default Tab Navigate By Group	BUILTIN: Schedule
Security	Default	Navigate to Default Page First	No
	User Interface	Show Zone Arrows	No
Climate	Advanced Settings	Enable Page Swipe	No
Lighting	Tab Config: Security System		
Lighting	Tab Config: Lighting System	Available Tabs	Visihle Tahe
Media	Tab Config: Climate System		
modia	Tab Config: Messaging	INTERFACE: Custom Tab	BUILTIN: Schedule
Messaging	🗌 💒 Tab Config: Irrigation System		KEYPAD: Master
	🔲 🍯 Tab Config: Video System		KEYPAD: Theater
Video	and Tab Config: Pool Control		
	New Touchscreen		
Irrigation	H Windows		
	- I Home Pages		Add Tab >>
Pool Control	🛨 🗉 HomeLogic Default 1		
Input/Output	🛨 🗉 HomeLogic Default 3		< Remove Tab
mpuroutput	HomeLogic Default 2		
UPS	H My Home Page		
			Wide Op
Event Mapper			Move Down
	System Images		
Content	System Sounds		
Floor Plan			

Exercise 3: Home Page Setting

Overview The system comes pre-configured with several built-in Home Page layouts. In the following steps you will select from among the different built-in Home Pages to see the differences.

How-to

- 1. Navigate to the **Interface** tab, expand the **Windows** interface, and select **User Interface**.
- 2. In the properties window at right, select **Default 2** from the **Home Page** drop-down list, then click **Apply** at the bottom of the screen.

User Interface: Default	
Home Page	Default 1
Display Settings (Day)	Default 1
Display Settings (Night)	Default 3
Hide HVAC Schedules	Default 4
Hide Light Schedules	No

3. Go to the **Viewer**, to see how the new **Home Page** appears.

V OneHome Demo	J									
g!	Home								52° Fair	
	Forecast		$\overline{\mathbf{V}}$			Mai	rch 2	2010)	
	Friday Sunny	46° / 57°		Sun	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thr	Fri	Sat
	Saturday Mostly Sunny	45° / 57°		-	1	2	3	4	5	6
40 %	Sunday Chance Rain Showers	46° / 47°		14	o 15	у 16	10 17	11 18	12 19	13 20
80 %	Monday Rain Showers	48° / 51°		21	22	23	24	25	26	27
78 %	Tuesday Chance Bain Showers	37° / 48°		28	29	30	31			

- 54° g! Home Fair Forecast Friday Mostly Sunny 44° / 53' Saturday Mostly Sunny 46° / 61' Sunday Partly Sunny 46° / 65 Monday Partly Sunny 46° / 55 Home Away Tuesday 43° / 49° Chance Rain Showers Mode 3 Mode 4 Wednesday Friday, April 2, 2010 3:50 PM
- 4. Change Home Page to Default 3 and view the change.

Exercise 4: Creating a Custom Home Page

- *Overview* In the following steps you will create a customized Home Page. As with color settings, the built-in Home Pages are not meant to be changed. Instead, we will create a new Home Page using Default 1 as our starting point and add a web image to it.
- How-to
 1. First, add a static, refreshing jpg image to populate on the Home Page. This image originates from the Internet, and requires a link on the Web to the desired image. *If you don't have Internet access, skip the following steps.*

Weather Maps

- a. Open a web browser and navigate to a weather site such as www.weather.com.
- b. Browse for local weather, and then find an image map that shows current weather conditions for your area.

For example, go to <u>www.weather.com</u> and type in your zip code. Scroll down to the Weather Map area, which displays an interactive map. Click on the **Original Radar Map** link to get a standard JPG file instead of the interactive map.

Click Map to Explore More Features NEW!



Note: You <u>must</u> use a static image file: html pages, Flash, and javacript will not load.

- c. Right-click inside the image, and select **Properties**.
- d. In the Properties dialog box, use your mouse to highlight the URL, and then press CTRL+C to copy the text. (The URL starts http://...)
 In Firefox:





- e. In **Configurator** click on to the **Content** tab. Right-click **Web Pictures**, then **Add New Web Picture**.
- f. Set the Name to "Local Weather" and click OK.



- g. In the properties window for the new **Web Picture**, place the cursor in the URL edit box, and then press **CTRL+V** to paste the url text for the weather image that you copied earlier.
- h. Click **Apply** at the bottom of the screen.

System	Media Content Scan Options	Web Picture: Local Weather					
Interface	Audio Share Folders	Name	Local Weather				
C:MUSIC Picture Library Scan Ontions		System #	9241				
Security	Picture Share Folders	Refresh Time	Every Hour				
		Server Name	Limwx.com				
Climate	E Web Pictures	File Name	/web/radar/us_bos_closeradar_plus_usen.jpg				
Lighting	Local Weather	URL	http://i.imwx.com/web/radar/us_bos_closeradar_plus_usen.jpg				

- 2. Add a new Home Page on the Interface tab. Right-click Home Pages, and then click Add New Touch Screen Home Page.
 - a. Set the Name to "My Home Page",
 - b. Select Default 2 from the Copy From list.
 - c. Click **OK**. This creates a new Home Page and starts it off with the same layout as the built-in HomeLogic Default 2.

Add New H	Add New Home Page				
Name	New Home Pa	ge			
Copy From	:				
< NONE >					
Default 1					
Default 2					
Default 3					
Default 4					
	Cancel	ОК			

- 3. Delete the Calendar Control.
 - a. Expand My Home Page.
 - b. Select 800x600 Touch Screen from the list of Viewer resolutions.

System	Interface	Home Page Lavout: My Home Page
oyotom	Communication Devices	Home Fage Layout. My Home Fage
Interface	Interface Devices	
intendee	Touch Screen Options	
Coourity	🛨 💶 Default	
Security	🛨 🗖 New Touchscreen	
	🛨 🗖 Windows	
Climate	🛨 🗖 Windows	
	🖃 💷 Home Pages	
Lighting	🛨 🗉 HomeLogic Default 1	
	🛨 🗉 HomeLogic Default 3	
Media	🛨 🗉 HomeLogic Default 2	
	🖃 💷 My Home Page	
Messaging	🔲 💷 800x600 Touch Screen 📃 🖡	
	800x480 Touch Screen	
Video	240x320 PDA	
	320x240 PDA	
Irrigation	240x240 PDA	
ingution	320x320 PDA	
Real Control	🖃 🗮 Display Settings	
Foor Control	🕀 🧮 BLACK HIVIS	
11	🕀 🗮 BLACK	
input/Output	🖽 🗮 WHITE	
	System Images	
UPS	System Sounds	
Event Mapper		
Content		
Floor Plan		
		Apply

Quick Reference: Screen Resolutions			
800 x 600resolution for viewer running on g!Connect, ELAN 8.4" in-wall, and 8.4" wireless tablets.			
800 x 480	resolution for viewer running on a TS7 or Profile 700 in-wall touchscreen		

c. Select the smaller block on the right– this is a **Calendar Control**. Right-click the control, then select **Delete Control** to remove the calendar.



- 4. Add a new control to display a web image in its place:
 - a. Right-click in the open area, then click Add New Control.
 - b. Select the **Picture From Internet** control, set the name to "Local Weather" and click **OK**.



c. Use the drop-down in the **Picture from Internet Properties** window to link it to the Web Picture added previously.

Picture from	n Internet Properties				×
Name	Local Weather				Picture
Text Color			Select Col	or	🗖 Default
Face Color			Select Col	or	🗖 Default
Radius Shading Shading			- 0 - 0 - 0		Default Default Default
Style	_	Borde	er None		-
Text Size	🔽 🗖 Default	Align			~
Text Quality		Fund	t. 🔽		~
Connect To	Local Weather				-
🔽 Default f	Behavior				

d. Resize the control to make it roughly the size of the calendar deleted in step 3c. Notice the box automatically snaps to the correct aspect ratio for your web pic. (This will only happen if you have an internet connection and you pasted a valid picture link).

🛃 g!Demo∶Con	figurator	
System	Interface	Home Page Layout: My HomePage
Interface	 Interface Devices Touch Screen Options 	
Security		
Climate	Image: Image	Land Weather
Lighting		
Media		
Messaging	■ My HomePage ■ 800x600 Touch Screen	
Video	☐ ■ 800x480 Touch Screen ☐ 🗮 Display Settings	Clock (Data/Time)
Irrigation	EBLACK HIVIS	
Pool Control	System Images	
Input/Output		
UPS		
Event Mapper		
Content		Apply Apply
- 5. Set the interface to use the new Home Page.
 - a. On the Interface tab, expand the My PC interface, and select User Interface.
 - b. In the properties window at right, set the **Home Page** to **My HomePage**. *This Interface will now use the custom Home Page instead of the built-in.*

System	Interface	User Interface: My PC		
Interface	Interface Devices	Home Page	My HomePage	
		Display Settings (Day)	BLACK	-
Security	My PC	Display Settings (Night)	BLACK	-
	🗌 🛃 Power Scheme	Hide HVAC Schedules	No	•
Climate	🗌 📑 User Interface			

6. Check your Viewer:



Exercise 5: Adding and Configuring a TS2

Overview The TS2 is a small, in-wall keypad style interface that can provide basic control of security, climate, lighting, and media for a specific area or zone rather than the entire system. To configure this interface, first connect and add the keypad to the system then specify the specific partition, thermostat, lighting keypad, and zone that it will control.

How-to To Add a TS2 interface from the Configurator Interface tab:

- 1. Add a Communication Device.
 - Right-click **Communication Devices** in the System Tree and select **Add New Device...**
 - Name the Device SC1
 - Type= Serial Port
 - Communication Type = ViaNet SC1
 - Click OK

Add New Communication	Device	×
Device Name	SC1	
Туре	Serial Port	•
Device		Ŧ
Communication Type	ViaNet SC1	•
	Cancel	<

Note: The g!Demo software will automatically add one TS2 to the system. In an actual system the keypads will be automatically discovered as they are added. See the *TS2 Integration Note* and *TS2 Installation Manual* for details and specific steps required.

🞒 g!Demo∶Con	figurator			
System	□ ← Interface □ ☞ Communication Devices Interface Device : TS2 ViaNet 82			
Interface	ELAN SC1	Name	TS2 ViaNet 82	
Security	TS2 ViaNet 82	Device Type	ELAN TS2	
Climate	Default My PC	Communication Device ViaNET ID	ELAN SC1 82	▼
Lighting	Befault 1	Enable Weather Page	Yes	-
Media	Default 2 Default 3 Default 4	Enable Sys Mode Page	Yes	
Messaging		Media Zone Security Partition	Theater House	•
Video	My HomePage	Lighting Keypad	Theater	
Irrigation		Backlight Timeout	10 Seconds	
Pool Control	System Images			
Input/Output				
UPS				
Event Mapper				
Content		Apply		

2. Configure options for the TS2 interface as described in the following table.

Field	Description	
Name	Editable field to name the device	
System #	System-assigned number. Cannot be changed.	
Device Type	Pre-filled with device type selected when adding this device. Cannot be changed.	
Communication Device	Select the communication device for this interface.	
ViaNET ID	System-provided ID. Cannot be changed.	
Enable Weather Page	Select Yes or No whether to display the weather info on the home page	
Enable Forecast Page	Select Yes or No whether to display a weather forecast on the TS2 device.	
Enable Sys Mode Page	Select Yes or No whether to display the page that allows House Mode selection.	
Media Zone	Select the Media Zone for this TS2 device.	
Security Partition	Select the Security Partition for this TS2 device.	
Lighting Keypad	Select the Lighting Keypad for this TS2 device.	
Thermostat	Select the Thermostat for this TS2 device.	
Backlight Timeout	Select the period of time that this device will remain illuminated without interaction.	

Notes:

<u></u>	

Lesson 14 Messaging



Overview

The g! software Messaging feature is used to provide phone answering service, including voice mail boxes where users can receive voice messages from incoming phone calls, or leave messages to each other from touch screens within the home.

The phone answering service also allows remote access of messages, as well as status and control of the home system over a standard phone line. In addition, Messaging features are used for transmitting alerts via phone (TTS), e-mail or text message based on system events.

You will:

- Learn how to setup your compatible ELAN Controller for phone features.
- Learn how to use and configure voice mail features.
- Learn how to send alerts based on system events.

Requirements

• A PC running g!Demo and g!Connect Pro.

-or-

• ELAN Controller and g!Connect Pro.

Messaging Overview

Overview The Messaging tab can be used to provide a number of communication features to the Home Owner by using a modem to integrate with the phone line; providing both answering service and remote telephone based access to home control features. Voice mail messages and call logs can be accessed through the g! Viewer. The messaging tab also can be used to send alerts via phone, e-mail or text messages to multiple contacts based on system events.

A note about Application licensing:

Included Messaging functionality: Supports one voicemail box for internal messaging. Also supports email.

Messaging Pro App: Supports up to 8 voice mailboxes for internal or phone messaging, outbound phone alerts, and remote phone house control. (Not available on MultiBrick controllers)

Terms

- **TTS Engine** Internal engine for translating text into speech (audio); used for phone based messaging functions and sending phone alerts.
- **Telephone Controller** The software component to use the modem for interfacing with the phone line
- Voice Mail Boxes- The individual mail boxes where voice mail can be recorded either from the phone or at a touch screen.
- E-Mail Messages (Outbound) Customizable e-mail messages that can be sent to system contacts based on system events.
- Text/Speech Messages- Customizable TTS messages that can be sent to system contacts or announced on touch screens based on system events.
- Greeting- Message played to incoming callers prior to voice mail recording.

How-to To integrate messaging features:

- Add the Telephone Controller so the g! software will interact with the phone line
- Configure Telephone Controller options such as default voice settings and login pin for remote access via telephone
- Configure a Voice Mail box for each anticipated user
- Setup **Greeting** options in the Viewer

Exercise 1: Configure Messaging

Overview In this exercise we will setup phone and voice mail features. This exercise will involve creating a framework in the Configurator so that features may be used and customized in the Viewer.

How-to

- 1. Open **Configurator** and Click on the **Messaging** tab.
- 2. Right-Click **Telephone Systems** and choose **Add New Device...**, then add an **Internal Telephone Controller**.
- 3. Configure Internal Telephone Controller options as desired:

Device : Internal Telephone Controller		
Name	Internal Telephone Controller	
System #	5527	
Device Type	Internal Telephone Controller	
Location	< SELECT >	
TTS Voice	Male 🗾	
Announce Date/Time	Yes	
Announce Name	Yes 💌	
Announce Number	Yes	
Login PIN	****	

Quick Reference			
TTS Voice	Choose the gender of computer generated Text-To- Speech voice.		
*Announce Choose Yes or No. Controls announcing of Date/Time Date/Time of voice messages by TTS Engir			
*Announce Name	Choose Yes or No. Controls announcing of Caller ID name by TTS Engine.		
*Announce Number	Choose Yes or No. Controls announcing of Caller ID incoming number by TTS Engine.		
Login PIN	Set a numerical pin which can be used to login to the system and access messages and Home Control features over the telephone.		

*Used when checking messages through dial-in.

- 4. There is an existing 'House' Voice Mail Box, and this will be used as the default "catch-all" for the system. Add another Voice Mail Box:
 - a. Right-click Voice Mailboxes in the System Tree, and select Add New Mailbox....
 - b. Type a name for the new mailbox. (Example: Kids)

Add New M	1ailBox			×
Name	Kids			
		Cancel	ОК	

Note: Up to 8 voice mail boxes may be configured with the Messaging Pro App.

Exercise 2: Configure Messaging Alerts (Phone)

Overview Alerts can be sent out by the system to specific contacts based on certain system events, such as a security alarm, a temperature reading, or even a certain A/V zone being activated after a certain time. These alerts can be sent as text via e-mail or text messaging or via voice over a telephone. The alert messages themselves can be customized and support the use of "tokens" to include specific system details. In the following exercise, phone alerts will be used to contact the home owner in the event of a burglar alarm.

Note: Phone Alerts are not available on controllers that do not have a modem, such as the MultiBrick.

How-to

1. Set up Contacts with phone numbers on the System Tab under Contacts and Users. If you already entered a phone number for a contact as part of Lesson 2: Configurator Overview, you may skip this step.

Add or edit an existing contact and enter the phone number as it should be dialed, including any prefix or area code information. Do not use punctuation such as dashes or parentheses. For example:

System	System	User: Home Owner	
Interface	CPU Usage	Name	Home Owner
intendee	System Modes	System #	6715
Security	Module Configuration	Email	homeowner@account.net
	Active Client Connections	Phone Number	1234567890
Climate	Contacts and Users	N.Dials	3
Liahtina	Admin Sector Admin	Ack Ends Call.	No
	I System Logs	Viewer Allowed	Yes
Media	Exceptions	Config Allowed	No
		Login As Tablet	Default
Messäging			Set User Password

- 2. **Configure a TTS message on the Messaging Tab.** This will be read by the HomeBrick using its Text-to-Speech engine, and will be read as typed.
 - a. To add a new Text/Speech message, right-click Text/Speech Messages and select Add New Text/Speech Message.
 - b. Enter a name for the message. ELAN recommends that you name the message something descriptive. For example, name a security panel related message "Security Alert".
 - c. Type in text to be read by the HomeBrick to your contact when triggered. In the example below, the message text is *Security Alarm Active*.

TTS Mesage :new	
Name	Security Alert
System #	6511
Text	Security Alarm Active

- 3. Create an Event Map to set the HomeBrick to send the message when a specified system event occurs.
 - a. Navigate to the Event Mapper tab, right-click Event Maps and Add New Event Map.

Note: ELAN recommends naming all your messaging alert event maps with the prefix *Alert:* to keep them organized.

Add New E	vent Map	×
Name	Alert: Security	
	Cancel OK	

b. Add an Event to trigger sending the message in the **Events** box.

Add Event		<u>×</u>
System Family	Event Groups	
Audio Zone Controller Climate System Display DVD Player DVR General System Generic Serial Device Input/Output Inputs IR Sender Irrigation System Keypad Controller Lighting System Media System Media System Messaging Outputs Pool Control Power Supply Security System Tuner Video Controller Video System	1st Floor Motion Back Door Front Door Garage Garage Door House Side Entrance Available Events Armed in Any Mode Armed in Stay Mode Armed in Unknown Mode Burglar Alarm Disarm Entry Delay Fxit Delay	Cancel OK
Audio Zone Controller Climate System Display DVD Player DVR General System Generic Serial Device Input/Output Inputs IR Sender Irrigation System Keypad Controller Lighting System Media System Media System Messaging Outputs Pool Control Power Supply Security System Tuner Video Controller Video System	1st Floor Motion Back Door Front Door Garage Garage Door House Side Entrance Available Events Armed in Any Mode Armed in Away Mode Armed in Stay Mode Armed in Unknown Mode Burglar Alarm Disarm Entry Delay Exit Delay	
		Cancel OK

For this example, send a message when the Burglar Alarm is active in the House Partition. Select:

- System Family = Security System
- Event Group = House (for the House Partition)
- Available Events = Burglar Alarm

System Family	Command Groups
Audio Zone Controller Climate System Display DVD Player DVR General System Generic Serial Device Input/Output Inputs IR Sender Irrigation System Keypad Controller Lighting System Media System Messaging Outputs Pool Control Power Supply Security System Tuner Video Controller Video System	Contact: Home Owner MailBox: House MailBox: Kids TTS: Security Alert WAV File: beep2.wav WAV File: bleep10.wav WAV File: changemode.wav WAV File: Chime1.wav WAV File: Chime2.wav Available Commands Call Send Email Options Security Alert

c. Add a Command to select the action of sending the message in the **Command** box.

In this example, we are sending our Security Alert Text/Speech message to Contact Home Owner. Select:

- System Family = Messaging
- **Command Group =** Contact: Home Owner
- Available Commands = Call
- **Options** = Security Alert (the specific message you wish to send)

Exercise 3: Check the Viewer

- *Overview* In Exercise 1 we set up the framework for voice messaging in Configurator. In this exercise, we will explore voice messaging features.
- How-to
- Open g!Connect Pro and start the Viewer to access the g! home page. Click the g! icon to access the main system icons then click messaging to access the messaging icons.



The screen displays available messaging options:

- The House Voicemail box
- The Kids Voicemail box
- A page to access the messaging settings
- A page to view the recent call log

2. Click the House icon to access the House voicemail box.



Notice on this page:

- There are no messages in the g!Demo, an actual system would show messages here.
- Options to playback and delete messages
- Options to adjust playback volume.
- 3. Click the Messaging icon next to the **g!** at the top to access the other messaging screens then click Settings.

S: gibeilio						
g!		S	ettings			
		Answ	ver Settings			
Affe	ar Affe	ar Affor	After	After	After	
1 Ri	na 2 Ria	ns 3 Rinns	4 Rings	5 Rinns	6 Rinns	
	2/4 Call Saver HOUS			KIDS	Off	
	GREETI	NG		GREETIN	G	
L	Jse Default	Record New	St	op 🔳	Play ►	

Notice on this screen there are options to configure the greeting and answering system pickup time.

4. Click the Messaging icon next to the **g!** at the top then click Call Log. The **Call Log** displays a list of recent calls.

Note: There will not be any calls listed in g!Demo.

<mark>g!</mark> g!Demo				
g!		Call Log		
		No Records		

Notes:

Notes:

<u> </u>	
<u> </u>	

Lesson 15

Configuring Irrigation Systems



Overview

This lesson shows you how to configure an irrigation system.

You will:

- Learn how irrigation systems are organized in the Configurator.
- Use the Configurator to set up communication for the irrigation controller and add the controller
- Configure irrigation groups.
- Add irrigation zones and assign them to irrigation groups.
- Learn how to configure watering schedules
- Check the Viewer to confirm proper configuration.
- Understand the various features available in the Viewer.

Sample House

Our sample house will be configured as follows:

- Two irrigation groups: Lawns and Flower Beds.
- Four zones: One rotor zone and one spray zone for the lawns and two drip zone valves

Requirements

• A PC running g!Demo and g!Connect Pro.

-or-

• ELAN Controller and g!Connect Pro.

Irrigation Integration Overview

Overview The following diagram shows the sample house irrigation system schematically, illustrating the components that are important to the ELAN controller.



Integrating the irrigation panel with the g! software will provide the homeowner access to their irrigation system through the Viewer. For the irrigation system in their home, they will be able to:

- View system status
- Manually activate individual zones
- Manage watering schedules and seasonal adjustments
- Review watering history.

A note about Application licensing:

- **Included Irrigation functionality:** The ELAN g! software does not have any included irrigation functionality. All irrigation integration will require the Irrigation Pro Application. The virtual irrigation system may be used for training and demo with out the Pro license.
- **Irrigation PRO App:** Supports all irrigation controllers with which the g! software integrates. This version allows control of up to 16 irrigation groups and up to 256 zones. This version keeps a history of zone watering.

- *Terms* The following terms are used in the Configurator:
 - **Communication Device:** The method the g! software will use to communicate with an external device, including information about the connection type and protocol.
 - **Irrigation Controller:** The actual irrigation controller (manufacturer/ model) that is integrated.
 - Irrigation Group: A group of similar plant-type irrigation zones. Typical irrigation groups include Lawns and Flower Beds. Irrigation zones are grouped to provide appropriate watering scheduling for the zone types. For example, the flower beds may need to be watered on a daily basis but the lawns only watered every few days. Each Irrigation Group will display in the Viewer as a separate tab to allow individual group scheduling.
 - Irrigation Zone: An individual water valve in the system, such as Lawn Rotors or Flower Drips. These are the valves that the controller will activate to start watering. Note that there is often more that one spraying head per zone but only one zone can be active at a time.
 - **Global Irrigation Periods:** A time of the day for which you will schedule a watering.
- *How-to* To integrate an irrigation system
 - Add the **Communication Device**
 - Add the Irrigation Controller
 - Add the Irrigation Groups
 - Add the Zones and assign them to a Irrigation Group
 - Check the Viewer interface

Note: Refer to the irrigation controller integration notes for details.

Exercise 1: Add the Communication Device

Overview In the following steps you will add a **Communication Device**. The Communication Device is the bridge between the g! software and the irrigation controller, and is where you will specify how the systems are physically connected and what communication protocol should be used.

Note: Actual system setup may be different depending upon which irrigation controller is installed on site. Refer to the *Integration Notes* for the particular controller for details.

How-to

1. Start the Configurator, click the **Irrigation** tab at left, then click **Communication Devices**, as shown below:



- 2. Right-click **Communication Device** and select **Add New Communication Device**. *The Add New Communication Device window opens.*
- Configure the settings as shown below for a standard serial port, and click OK.

Add New Communicat	ion Device 🛛 🛛 🛛
Device Name	Irrigation
Туре	Serial Port
Device	
Communication Type	Standard Connection
	Cancel OK

Quick Reference	Quick Reference: Add New Communication Device				
Device Name	Enter a name for the external device. This can be any name, but should be descriptive so that you can identify this specific device in the Configurator. DO NOT leave this field set to "New Device".				
Туре	The type of connection you are using, such as serial port or Ethernet.				
Device	This field will populate only if needed, depending on the selected Type.				
Communication Type	This is the protocol of the communication. See the <i>Integration Note</i> for the specific irrigation controller for more information.				

4. Select the Irrigation device in the System Tree as shown below.

System	Communication Devices	Communication Device	e: Irrigation
Interface	Irrigation	Name	Irrigation
Intenace	+ & Inigation Controllers	System #	5549
Security	Global Irrigation Periods	Device Type	Serial Port / Standard Connection
or i	Worning	Location	< SELECT >
Climate		Enable Sharing	No
Lighting		Sharing Port	0
		COM Port	NONE
Media		Protocol	R5232
Messaging		Baud Rate	9600
wessaging		Flow Control	None
Video		Parity	None
		Data Bits	8
Irrigation		Stop Bits	1
Pool Control			
Input/Output			
UPS			
Event Mapper			
Content			
Floor Plan		Apply	\supset

5. In the properties window at right, select the desired COM port.

Note: The drop-down menu only shows the ports that are available. If you are running **g!Demo** on your laptop you will only see available ports on the laptop. Leave the selection set to **NONE** if you are using **g!Demo**.

Exercise 2: Add the Irrigation Controller

Overview At this point the Communication Device is configured, and the irrigation controller can be added.

Note: Actual system setup may be different depending upon which irrigation controller is installed on site. Refer to the *Integration Notes* for the particular controller for details.

How-to

- 1. In the Configurator, right-click **Irrigation Controllers**, then click **Add New Device**.
- 2. In the Add New Device dialog box, select Virtual Irrigation Controller, and then click OK. *This adds a new irrigation controller.*



3. Select the new irrigation controller in the Configurator tree. The properties for that controller display on the right.



Exercise 3: Add Irrigation Groups and Irrigation Zones

Overview At this point the irrigation controller has been added and set to communicate with the ELAN controller. You will now add Irrigation Groups and Irrigation Zones, and then associate the zones with Irrigation Groups. Each Irrigation Group will populate in the Viewer as a separate tab in the scheduler view. Assigning zones to the Irrigation Groups will allow you to schedule watering for the zones separately in the Viewer.

How-to

- 1. Add two Irrigation Groups.
 - a. Right-click on Irrigation Group and click **Add New Irrigation Group**. *The add Irrigation Group box opens.*
 - Irrigation System System Sommunication Devices Section 3 Interface 🖃 🕵 Irrigation Controllers 📃 🗶 Virtual Irrigation Controller Security Lirrigation Zones (None) Irrigation Log Climate http://www.compation.com E Global Irrigation Periods Lighting Morning Media Add Irrigation Group Messaging Lawns Name Video Cancel ок Irrigation
 - b. Enter the name of the group as Lawns and click OK.

- c. Repeat the two steps above to add another Irrigation Group named **Flower Beds**.
- d. Your configuration should now look similar to the screen below.



- 2. Add four irrigation zones and assign them to zone groups.
 - a. Right-click Irrigation Zones in the System Tree and select Add New Irrigation Zone. The Add Irrigation Zone box opens.
 - b. Set the **Zone Name** of the first zone to **Lawn Rotors**. *This is the zone name as it will be displayed in the Viewer.*
 - c. Set the **Irrigation Group** to **Lawns**. This step assigns the zone to an *Irrigation Group*

System	Irrigation System	l Deviewe	
	Communication	Devices	
Interface	Seringation Contro	ollers	
	📃 🕵 Virtual Irrigati	on Controller	
Security	🔄 💶 Irrigation Zo	nes (None) 🛛 📘	
or: .	🔄 📃 🗐 Irrigation Log	g	
Climate	Irrigation Group	S	
Lighting	Lawns		
Lighting	Global Irrigation	Periods	
Media	Morning	TT Chous	
in cara		Add Irrigation Zone	
Messaging		Zone Name	Lawn Rotors
Video			-
VIGEO		Controller Zone Number	Zone #1
Irrigation		Irrigation Group	Lawns
Pool Control			
PoorControl			Cancel OK

d. Click **OK** to add the new zone

Note: The Controller Zone Number is the zone output on the actual irrigation controller. By default this will start at Zone #1 and increase incrementally.

- 3. If you are adding zones out of order, select the proper Controller Zone Number following these steps:
 - a. Repeat step 2a-d to add a second zone named **Lawn Sprays** and assigned to the **Lawn** irrigation group.
 - b. Add a third zone named **Front Flower Drips** and assign it to the **Flower Beds** Irrigation Group

Zone Name	Front Flower Drips	
Controller Zone Number	Zone #3	•
Irrigation Group	Flower Beds	•

c. Add a fourth zone named **Side Flower Drips** and assign it to the **Flower Bed** Irrigation Group.



4. Your configuration should look similar to the example below.

Note: Clicking on Irrigation Groups in the tree will highlight all zones assigned to that group.

Exercise 4: Add Global Irrigation Periods

Overview At this point the irrigation system has been configured and you now need to set up the irrigation scheduling framework in the Configurator. You will add one Global Irrigation Period for each time of day that you will be watering.

By default, the irrigation scheduler includes one Global Irrigation Period named Morning. In this exercise you will add a second period for afternoon. Each Global Irrigation Period will add a place holder in the Viewer for setting the actual time of day to begin the watering.

How-to1. Right-click Global Irrigation Periods in the System Tree and select AddNew Irrigation Period.



2. Enter **Afternoon** as the name, then click **OK**. Your configuration should now look similar to the example below.



Exercise 5: Check the Viewer

- *Overview* In this exercise you will use the Viewer to check the irrigation system configuration and learn about the features and controls related to the irrigation system.
- How-to
- 1. Open the Viewer to access the g! home page. Click the g! icon to access the main system icons then click the irrigation icon navigate to the Irrigation screen.

g! g!Demo						
g!		Irrigat	tion	ن Status	SCHEDULE	ЦЦЦ HISTORY
	All Zones Off		Off	Manual	Run F	rogram
Manual	Zone Operation				St	art
Zone Nam	e	M	anual-Mode Run	Time		
Lawn Roto Lawn Spra Front Flow Side Flow	vrs vys er Drips er Drips	14 14 14 14	00 00 00			

In the example above you can see:

- a. There are icons at the top of the screen to view system status, schedule, and history.
- b. The current system status is **All Zones Off**. This means that there are no zones currently watering. When the system is running a scheduled watering the current active zone will display in the status window.
- c. The system is currently in **Run Program** mode. This means that it will run any scheduled watering events.
- d. The entire zone list is shown and controls are available to execute manual zone activation when the system is set to manual mode.

2. Configure the schedule for the Lawn Irrigation Group as follows. Set the schedule for the Lawn Rotors to run for 10 minutes and the Lawn sprays to run 8 minutes every Monday, Wednesday, and Friday starting 20 minutes after sunrise. Also confirm that the Lawn zones will not water during the afternoon schedule.

To do this:

- a. Click on the Lawn Rotors zone then click the More Time button until the Base Time is set to 10 minutes.
- b. Click on Lawn Sprays and adjust the Base Time to 8 minutes.
- c. Click the **Days of the Week** button to highlight it then click **Mon**, **Wed**, and **Fri** to highlight them and set them as the days to water.

g!Demo					
<u>g!</u>		Irrigation	Ú Status	SCHEDULE	Ш.) Нізтор
LAWNS		FLOWER BEDS	START TIMES	SEASONAL	. MAP
Periods	Zone	Base Time	Application Time		
Morning Afternoon	Lawn Rotors Lawn Sprays	10 Minutes 8 Minutes	10 Minutes, O Se 8 Minutes, O Sec	5	
Days to Water	Days in Mor	th Days of Week	Every Day	Skip D	ays
Lawns	Mon	Tue Wed	Thu Fri	Sat	Sun

d. Click on the **Afternoon Schedule** tab to verify that watering times for the Lawn zones are set to zero minutes. *This will keep the lawn from watering at the afternoon period.*

glDemo						
g!		Irrigat	ion	ن Status	SCHEDULE	ЦЦЈ HISTORY
LAWNS		FLOWER BEDS	START T	IMES	SEASONAL	MAP
Periods	Zone	Base Tim	e	Application Tim	e	
Moming Afternoon	Lawn Rotors Lawn Sprays	0 Minute 0 Minute	\$	O Seconds O Seconds		
Days to Water Lawns	Days in Mo	nth Days of We	ek	Every Day	Skip D	ays
	Mon	Tue Wed	Thu	Fri	Sat	Sun

 Click the Start Times tab to set the times for both the Morning and Afternoon periods. Click Sunrise for Morning then use the arrow buttons to increment to + 20 minutes. Set afternoon for clock then use the arrows to set the desired start time.



Note: Any time a schedule adjustment is made the System Mode will default to Off. Once you have finished making schedule changes click on Run Program to start the system running the new schedule.

4. Repeat the steps above to configure the schedule for the Flower Beds Irrigation Group so that each Flower Bed Drip zone waters for 10 minutes in the morning and again at 4pm in the afternoon every day of the week. Your Flower Bed schedules should look like the examples below.



With this schedule set up, the system will water the Lawn zones followed by the Flower Bed zones in the morning starting at 20 minutes after sunrise. Since irrigation controllers will only water one zone at a time, the system will begin watering with the first zone in the list, in this case the Lawn Rotors.

Once that zone has run for its scheduled time, it will shut off and the Lawn Sprays will start. Next, the Front Flower Drips will run, followed by the Side Flower Drips. Then, at 4pm only the Flower Bed zones will water in order from top to bottom.

5. Click on the Seasonal Map tab. This tab allows you to adjust the percentage of application time on a month by month basis. This is useful as an adjustment during spring and fall when the temperatures are not as high and watering requirements are less. A typical system may be adjusted as shown in the screen below.



Notes:

Notes:

Lesson 16 Configuring Pool Systems



Overview

This lesson will show you how to configure a pool controller in the g! software.

You will:

- Learn how to add a pool controller.
- Learn how to control and schedule pool functions in the Viewer.

Requirements

• A PC running g!Demo and g!Connect Pro.

-or-

• ELAN Controller and g!Connect Pro.

Overview

Overview Integrating a Pool System with the g! software provides the home owner with access to control pool features in the present, schedule pool functions for the future, and check the history of pool pumps and circuits. Pool Integration can control, schedule, and report history for many pool devices, including: Filter Pumps, Water Features, Heaters, Chlorinators, Pool Lights, Spa Jets and more.

Note: Specific features available in the g! software will vary depending on the Pool System installed. Please review the Integration Notes for the specific system for more information.

Typically, the pool controller is installed by a pool system professional, and is a fully functional independent system prior to integration with the g! software. In most instances, the Pool & Spa are controlled by a single control board, and an interface adapter is used to connect the ELAN controller electrically with this controller.



A note about Application licensing:

Included Pool functionality: The ELAN g! software does not have any included Pool integration functionality. All Pool integration will require the Pool Pro Application. The virtual Pool system may be used for training and demo with out the Pro license.

Pool & Spa Pro App: The Pool & Spa Pro Application supports all Pool Controllers with which the g! software integrates. This version allows for control of up to two bodies of water, on a single controller. Please see the ELAN website for a full list of supported Pool controllers.

- *Terms* The following terms are used in the **Configurator** to describe the equipment in a pool system:
 - **Communication Device:** The method the g! software will use to communicate with an external device, including information about the connection type and protocol.
 - Pool Controller: The Pool Controller interfaces with and controls pool devices like filter pumps, heaters, and pool circuits such as fountains or lights.

How-to To integrate Pool & Spa:

- Add the **Communication Device**
- Add the Pool Controller
- Configure Circuits
- Check the Viewer

Exercise 1: Add the Pool Controller

Overview The Virtual Pool Controller added in the following steps simulates control, feedback and temperatures as in a real pool system. It closely resembles a fully featured Pool Controller such as a Pentair IntelliTouch.

Note: Actual system setup may be different depending upon which pool controller is installed on site. Refer to the *Integration Notes* for the particular pool controller for details.

How-to

- 1. Add a Communication Device.
 - a. From the Pool Control tab in the Configurator, right-click
 Communication Devices and select Add New Communication
 Device. The Add New Communication Device window opens.

Add New Communication Device					
Device Name	Pool & Spa				
Туре	Serial Port 💌	1			
Device		1			
Communication Type	Standard Connection	1			
	Cancel OK				

- b. Name the Communication Device "Pool & Spa".
- c. Set the communication type to Standard Connection.
- 2. Add a Pool Controller.
 - a. Right-click **Pool Controllers**, and select **Add New Pool Controller**. The Add New Pool Controller window opens.
| Add New | Pool Controller 🛛 🔀 |
|----------------------|---------------------------|
| Name | Virtual Pool Controller |
| Device Tr | vpe |
| Jandy A
Pentair I | quaLink RS
ntelliTouch |
| Virtual P | ool Controller |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | (|
| Search | For Devices Cancel OK |

b. Select Virtual Pool Controller, and click OK.

Note: In a live system, the next step would typically involve configuring circuits to ensure controls are named correctly and appear in the correct area of the Viewer. However, the Virtual Pool Controller used for this training is hard-coded, and the circuits are not editable.

Exercise 2: Check the Viewer

- *Overview* Now that we have added our pool controller, we will go into the Viewer to see the pool temperature, control pool features, set up a schedule and explore the available options.
- *How-to* 1. Open the **Viewer** and navigate to the default **Pool** screen.
 - 2. The screen typically contains the controls for the filter pump, cleaners, spa jets, and heat settings.



The Main screen is divided into two sections:

- **Pool:** 2-Way toggle buttons for the Pool Filter Pump ("Pool"), Cleaner, and Heating Options. Up and Down arrows alter the heater set point.
- **Spa:** 2-Way toggle buttons for the Spa Filter Pump ("Spa"), Spa Jets, and Heating Options. Up and Down arrows alter the heater set point.

- 3. Click on the **Features** tab to access the **Water Features** controls. Use this page to control other pool circuits with 2-way toggle buttons.
 - Typically used for major water features such as Fountains and Waterfalls.
 - Click the **Fountain** button to turn the fountain on.



 Click the Lights tab to access the lighting control screen. This screen gives you basic on/off and level control (if applicable) of lights controlled by the Pool Controller.

			Po	ool			MAI) N	्र SETTI)} INGS	цЦЦ НІЗТОР
_	FEAT	JRES			ŭ	GHTS				SYSTEM Status	_
									Off	On	
									Off	Оп	
									Off	On	
Off	10%	20%	30%	40%	50%	60%	70%	80%	90%	100%	
Off	10%	20%	30%	40%	50%	60%	70%	80%	90%	100%	
									Off	On	
									Off	On	
All Off		All	On		Color S	Set	Col	or Syr	10	Color	swim
	Off Off All Off	FEATU Off 10% Off 10%	FEATURES Off 10% 20% Off 10% 20%	PC FEATURES Off 10% 20% 30% Off 10% 20% 30%	FEATURES Off 10% 20% 30% 40% Off 10% 20% 30% 40% Off 10% 20% 30% 40%	Pool FEATURES LI Off 10% 20% 30% 40% 50% Off 10% 20% 30% 40% 50%	FEATURES LIGHTS 0ff 10% 20% 30% 40% 50% 60% 0ff 10% 20% 30% 40% 50% 60% 0ff 10% 20% 30% 40% 50% 60% All Off All On Color Set 60%	FEATURES LIGHTS 0ff 10% 20% 30% 40% 50% 60% 70% 0ff 10% 20% 30% 40% 50% 60% 70% 0ff 10% 20% 30% 40% 50% 60% 70% All Off All On Color Set Color Color Set Color	FEATURES LIGHTS 0ff 10% 20% 30% 40% 50% 60% 70% 80% 0ff 10% 20% 30% 40% 50% 60% 70% 80% 0ff 10% 20% 30% 40% 50% 60% 70% 80% All Off All On Calor Set Color System Color System	Pool Setting FEATURES LIGHTS 0ff 0ff 0ff 10% 20% 30% 40% 50% 60% 70% 80% 90% 0ff 10% 20% 30% 40% 50% 60% 70% 80% 90% 0ff 10% 20% 30% 40% 50% 60% 70% 80% 90% 0ff 10% 20% 30% 40% 50% 60% 70% 80% 90% 0ff 10% 20% 30% 40% 50% 60% 70% 80% 90% 0ff 10% 20% 30% 40% 50% 60% 70% 80% 90%	Pool S

5. Click on the **Settings** tab. This tab provides access to various setting in the pool system.

g! g!Demo								
g!			Р	ool		🤝 MAIN	ද ි ිය SETTINGS	Ш. HISTORY
LIGHT COLORS	SWIM	SWIM COLOR		SCHEDULE		RUN-ONCE		3 TIMER
Pool SAM 1	winte	Light Green	Green	Cyan	Blue	Lavender	Magenta	Light Magenta
Pool SAM 2	winte	Light Green	Green	Cyan	Blue	Lavender	Magenta	Light Magenta
Pool SAM 3	winte	Light Green	Green	Cyan	Blue	Lavender	Magenta	Light Magenta

a. The lighting tabs allow you to adjust the lighting colors on pool systems that have this feature.

b. The **Schedule** tab allows you to add scheduled "programs" for pool pumps, water feature circuits, and lighting. These programs will activate the desired filter or circuit for the time period entered, and may be customized to run only certain days and times.

g!			Pool	,	🤝 Main	ද ි රි SETTINGS	ЦЦЦ HISTOR
LIGHT COLORS	SWIM C	OLOR	SCHEDULE	RUN-O	NCE	EGG	TIMER
Circuit	Heat Command	Start Time	Stop Time	Days to Run			Add Program
Pool		8:00 AM	5:00 PM	Every Day			Delete Program
Circuit Start Time	•	Pool 8:00 AM	Heat Chann	Command Le Heat Set Point		Don't Char Manual	nge 🕨
Stop Time	•	5:00 PM				manua	
Days to Run	All Su	n Mon	Tue	Wed 1	hu	Fri	Sat

- c. The **Run-Once** tab allows similar features as the Schedule tab, but items set on this page will only run once, rather than repeat the cycle every week. This is useful in instances when there may be some special event, like a party, and you would like to schedule the filter to run on what is usually an off day to ensure the pool is clean for your guests.
- d. The **Egg Timer** tab sets the default interval for pool feature activations. Typically, when items are activated manually or scheduled on the Run-Once tab they will use this "Egg Timer" to control how long the circuit will stay active. This is useful so that features like Waterfalls or Lights will not stay running all day and waste energy, and allows the home owner to not worry about remembering to shut them off.

g!		Pool	RAIN	ැි SETTINGS	ЦЦЦ Нізтог
LIGHT COLORS	SWIM COLOR	SCHEDULE	RUN-ONCE	EGG	TIMER
Circuit		Run Time			
Pool		12 Hours 0 Minutes			
Cleaner		12 Hours 0 Minutes			
Spa		12 Hours 0 Minutes			
Jets		12 Hours 0 Minutes			
Waterfall		12 Hours 0 Minutes			
Mist		12 Hours 0 Minutes			
Fountain		12 Hours 0 Minutes			
Deck Light		12 Hours 0 Minutes			
Entry Light		12 Hours 0 Minutes			
Back Light		12 Hours 0 Minutes			
Gazebo Lights		12 Hours 0 Minutes			
Patio Lights		12 Hours 0 Minutes			
Pool SAM 1		12 Hours 0 Minutes			
Pool SAM 2		12 Hours 0 Minutes			

6. The **History** tab displays the temperature readings for the Pool, Spa, and outside temperature in a line graph, with colored blocks along the bottom indicating when certain circuits are active. This enables the home owner to track the usage and run times of circuits like filters and heaters alongside temperature readings, and may also be useful as a diagnostic tool.

Notes:
